FINAL EXPRESS TERMS
OF PROPOSED BUILDING STANDARDS
OF THE DIVISION OF THE STATE ARCHITECT - ACCESS COMPLIANCE

REGARDING THE ADOPTION BY REFERENCE OF THE
2006 EDITION OF THE INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE (IBC)
INTO THE CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS, TITLE 24, PART 2

Chapters 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 9, 10, 11B, 11C, 16, 24, 27, 29, 30, 31, 31B, 33, 34 and 35

The Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance (DSA-AC) proposes to adopt the 2006 edition of the International Building Code (IBC) for codification and effectiveness into the 2007 edition of the California Building Code (CBC) as presented on the following pages, including any necessary amendments. DSA-AC further proposes to:

- Repeal the 2001 edition of the California Building Code;
- Repeal amendments to the model codes that are no longer necessary, repeal or amend building standards that are not addressed by a model code;
- Relocate or codify existing adopted and necessary amendments to the model code into the format of the model code proposed for adoption, the action of which has no regulatory effect; adopt new necessary amendments to the model code proposed for adoption;
- Adopt new building standards that are not addressed by the model code proposed for adoption.

SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING THIS RULEMAKING:

The Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance has structured its 2006 Rulemaking submittal into two separate items:

- **ITEM #1 - 2006 IBC RELATED ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS** contain adoptions and amendments related to the model code adoption of the 2006 International Building Code.

- **ITEM #2 - US DOJ ADA CERTIFICATION RELATED ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS** contains adoptions and amendments to address items identified by the USDOJ which do not meet or exceed the accessibility requirements of the ADA Standards for Accessible Design.

Rulemaking submitted under this package is:

ITEM #1 - 2006 IBC RELATED ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS

Legend for Express Terms:

1. Existing California amendments or code language being modified: All such language appears in *italics*, modified language is <u>underlined</u> or in ~~strikeout~~.

2. New California amendments: All such language appears <u>*underlined and in italics*</u>.

3. Repealed text: All such language appears in ~~strikeout.~~

4. Notation: Authority and Reference citations are provided at the end of each chapter.

ITEM #1: 2006 IBC RELATED ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS

CALIFORNIA CHAPTER 1
GENERAL CODE PROVISIONS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY		**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY		**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments		
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below		
Adopt only those sections listed below		**X**
101.1	CA	**X**
101.2	CA	**X**
101.3	CA	**X**
101.3.1	CA	**X**
101.3.2	CA	**X**
101.4	CA	**X**
101.5	CA	**X**
101.6	CA	**X**
101.7	CA	**X**
101.7.1	CA	**X**
101.7.2	CA	**X**
101.7.3	CA	**X**
101.8	CA	**X**
101.8.1	CA	**X**
101.9	CA	**X**
101.10	CA	**X**
101.11	CA	**X**
101.12	CA	**X**
109	CA	**X**
109.1	CA	**X**
109.1.1	CA	**X**
109.1.1.1	CA	**X**
109.1.1.2	CA	**X**
109.1.1.3	CA	**X**
109.1.1.4	CA	**X**
109.1.1.5	CA	**X**
109.1.2	CA	**X**
109.1.2.1	CA	**X**
109.1.2.2	CA	**X**
109.1.2.3	CA	**X**
109.1.2.4	CA	**X**
109.1.3	CA	**X**
109.1.4	CA	**X**
109.1.4.1	CA	**X**
109.1.4.2	CA	**X**
109.1.4.3	CA	**X**
109.1.5	CA	**X**
109.1.6	CA	**X**
109.1.7	CA	**X**

CALIFORNIA CHAPTER 1
GENERAL CODE PROVISIONS
*(**Note:** Adopt only those sections listed in the matrix adoption table.)*

SECTION 101
GENERAL

101.1 Title. *These regulations shall be known as the California Building Code, may be cited as such and will be referred to herein as "this code." The California Building Code is part 2 of eleven parts of the official compilation and publication of the adoptions, amendment, and repeal of building regulations to the California Code of Regulations,*

Title 24, also referred to as the California Building Standards Code. This part incorporates by adoption the 2006 International Building Code of the International Code Council with necessary California amendments.

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.1 Title, 2nd Paragraph)
~~*[For DSA-AC] For the State of California, these regulations shall be known as the California Building Code. The provisions contained in the California Building Code of the (compiled) California Building Standards Code as defined in Section 18910, Health and Safety Code, may be cited as such and are referred to hereafter as "these Regulations" or "these building standards" or "this code."*~~

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.2 Purpose)
~~101.2 Purpose. The purpose of this code is to provide minimum standards . . .~~
~~The purpose of this code is not to create or otherwise establish or designate any particular class or group of persons who will or should be especially protected or benefited by the terms of this code.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] This language is not adopted by DSA-AC.*~~

101.2 Purpose. *The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, access to persons with disabilities, sanitation, adequate lighting and ventilation, and energy conservation; to preserve life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment; and to provide safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.*

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.2 Purpose, 3rd Paragraph)
[DSA-AC] The purpose of this code is to ensure that barrier-free design is incorporated in all buildings, facilities, site work and other developments to which this code applies and to ensure that they are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.3 Scope)
~~101.3 Scope. The provisions of this code shall apply to the construction, alteration, moving, demolition ...~~

~~For additions, alterations, moving and maintenance . . .~~

~~*Where, in any specific case, different . . .*~~

~~*Wherever in this code reference is made . . .*~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] This language is not adopted by DSA-AC.*~~

101.3 Scope. *The provisions of this code shall apply to the construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal and demolition of every building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such building structures throughout the State of California.*

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.3.1 and 101.17 Application)
~~*101.3.1 [For DSA-AC] The provisions of the model codes which are adopted by these regulations are applicable to all occupancy groups and uses regulated by this code. The amendments to the model codes are applicable only to those occupancies or uses which the state agency adopting the amendments is authorized to regulate as listed in Section 101.17.*~~

~~*101.17 Application.*~~
~~*Vesting Authority. When adopted by a state agency, the provision of this code shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the State Legislature.*~~
~~*Following is a list of the state agencies that adopt building standards, the specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, and the specific statutory authority of each agency to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards of this code, unless otherwise stated.*~~

101.3.1 Non-State-Regulated Buildings, Structures, and Applications. *Except as modified by local ordinance pursuant to Section 101.8, the building standards in the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9 and 10 shall apply to all occupancies and applications not regulated by a state agency.*

101.3.2 State-Regulated Buildings, Structures, and Applications. *The model code, state amendments to the model code, and/or state amendments where there are no relevant model code provisions, shall apply to the following buildings, structures, and applications regulated by state agencies as referenced in the Matrix Adoption Tables and as specified in sections 102 through 113, except where modified by local ordinance pursuant to Section*

101.8. When adopted by a state agency, the provisions of this code shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the State Legislature.

Note: *See Preface to distinguish the model code provisions from the California provisions.*

1. *State-owned buildings, including buildings constructed by the Trustees of the California State University, and to the extent permitted by California laws, buildings designed and constructed by the Regents of the University of California, and regulated by the Building Standards Commission. See section 102 for additional scope provisions.*

2. *Local detention facilities regulated by the Board of Corrections. See section 103 for additional scope provisions.*

3. *Barbering, cosmetology or electrolysis, establishments, acupuncture offices, pharmacies, veterinary facilities, and structural pest control locations regulated by the Department of Consumer Affairs. See section 104 for additional scope provisions.*

4. *Energy efficiency standards regulated by the California Energy Commission. See section 105 for additional scope provisions.*

5. *Dairies and places of meat inspection regulated by the Department of Food and Agriculture. See section 106 for additional scope provisions.*

6. *Organized camps, laboratory animal quarters, public swimming pools, radiation protection, commissaries serving mobile food preparation vehicles, and wild animal quarantine facilities regulated by the Department of Health Services. See section 107 for additional scope provisions.*

7. *Hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartment houses, dwellings, dormitories, condominiums, shelters for homeless persons, congregate residences, employee housing, factory-built housing, and other types of dwellings containing sleeping accommodations with common toilets or cooking facilities. See section 108 for additional scope provisions.*

8. *Accommodations for persons with disabilities in buildings containing newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings, new common use spaces serving existing covered multifamily dwellings, additions to existing buildings where the addition alone meets the definition of a covered multifamily dwelling, and common-use spaces serving covered multifamily dwellings which are regulated by Department of Housing and Community Development. See section 108 for additional scope provisions.*

9. *Permanent buildings and permanent accessory buildings or structures constructed within mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. See section 108 for additional scope provisions.*

10. *Accommodations for persons with disabilities regulated by the Division of the State Architect. See section 109.1 for additional scope provisions.*

11. *Public elementary and secondary schools, community college buildings, and state-owned or state-leased essential service buildings regulated by the Division of the State Architect. See section 109.2 for additional scope provisions.*

12. *Qualified historical buildings and structures and their associated sites regulated by the State Historical Building Safety Board with the Division of the State Architect. See section 109.3 for additional scope provisions.*

13. *General acute care hospitals, acute psychiatric hospitals, skilled nursing and/or intermediate care facilities, clinics licensed by the Department of Health Services, and correctional treatment centers regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development. See section 110 for additional scope provisions.*

14. *Applications regulated by the Office of State Fire Marshal include but are not limited to the following in accordance with Section 111:*

1. *Buildings or structures used or intended for use as an:*

1.1. *Asylum, jail*

1.2. *Mental hospital, hospital, home for the elderly, children's nursery, children's home or institution, school or any similar occupancy of any capacity*

1.3. *Theater, dancehall, skating rink, auditorium, assembly hall, meeting hall, nightclub, fair building, or similar place of assemblage where 50 or more persons may gather together in a building, room or structure for the purpose of amusement, entertainment, instruction, deliberation, worship, drinking or dining, awaiting transportation, or education*

1.4. *Small family day care homes, large family day-care homes, residential facilities and residential facilities for the elderly, residential care facilities*

1.5. *State institutions or other state-owned or state-occupied buildings*

1.6. *High rise structures*

1.7. *Motion picture production studios*

1.8. *Organized camps*

1.9. *Residential structures*

2. *Tents, awnings or other fabric enclosures used in connection with any occupancy*

3. *Fire alarm devices, equipment and systems in connection with any occupancy*

4. *Hazardous materials, flammable and combustible liquids*

5. *Public school automatic fire detection, alarm, and sprinkler systems*

6. *Wildland urban interface fire areas*

15. *Public libraries constructed and renovated using funds from the California Library Construction and Renovation Bond Act of 1988 and regulated by the State Librarian. See section 112 for additional scope provisions.*

16. *Graywater systems regulated by the Department of Water Resources. See section 113 for additional scope provisions.*

17. (Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.3 Exception) ~~*101.3 [For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION:*~~ *For applications listed in 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance,* ~~*Outdoor*~~ *outdoor environments and uses shall be classified according to accessibility uses described in Chapters 11A, 11B and 11C*~~*, and life safety concerns*~~*.*

101.4 Appendices. *Provisions contained in the appendices of this code shall not apply unless specifically adopted by a state agency or adopted by a local enforcing agency in compliance with Health and Safety Code Section 18938 (b) for Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17950 for State Housing Law and Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7 for Fire Protection Districts. See section 101.8 of this code.*

101.5 (Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.7) ~~*101.7 [For DSA-AC] Standards Reference Documents.*~~***Referenced Codes.*** *The codes, standards and publications adopted and set forth in this code, including other codes, standards and publications referred to therein are, by title and date of publication, hereby adopted as standard reference documents of this code. When this code does not specifically cover any subject related to building design and construction, recognized* ~~*fire-prevention*~~ *architectural or engineering practices shall be employed. The National Fire Codes and the Fire Protection Handbook of the National Fire Prevention Association* ~~*may*~~ *are permitted to be used as authoritative guides in determining recognized fire-prevention engineering practices.*

101.6 (Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.8) ~~*101.8 [For DSA-AC]*~~ ***Non-Building Standards, Orders and Regulations.*** *Requirements contained in the* ~~*UBC*~~ *International Building Code, or in any other referenced standard, code or document, which are not building standards as defined in section 18909, Health and Safety Code, shall not be*

construed as part of the provisions of this code. For ~~the applicability of regulations related to maintenance, operation, use, limitation or prohibitions, and similar~~ non-building ~~regulations~~ standards, orders, and regulations, see other titles of the California Code of Regulations.

101.7 (Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.9) ~~*101.9 [For DSA-AC]*~~ ***Order of Precedence and Use.***

101.7.1 Differences. (Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.9.1) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ ~~***General.***~~ *In the event of any differences between these building standards and the standard reference documents, the text of these building standards shall govern.*

101.7.2 Specific provision. *Where a specific provision varies from a general provision, the specific provisions shall apply.*

101.7.3 Conflicts. *When the requirements of this code conflict with the requirements of any other part of the California Building Standards Code, Title 24, the most restrictive requirement shall prevail.*

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.9.2)
~~*101.9.2 [For DSA-AC] Fire Codes. Nothing in these building standards shall diminish the requirements of the state fire marshal.*~~

101.8 City, County, or City and County Amendments, Additions or Deletions. *The provisions of this code do not limit the authority of city, county, or city and county governments to establish more restrictive and reasonably necessary differences to the provisions contained in this code pursuant to complying with section 101.8.1. The effective date of amendments, additions, or deletions to this code of cities, counties, or city and counties filed pursuant to section 101.8.1 shall be the date filed. However, in no case shall the amendments, additions or deletions to this code be effective any sooner than the effective date of this code.*

Local modifications shall comply with Health and Safety Code Section 18938 (b) for Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17950 for State Housing Law or Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7 for Fire Protection Districts.

101.8.1 Findings and Filings.

1. *The city, county, or city and county shall make express findings for each amendment, addition or deletion based upon climatic, topographical, or geological conditions.*

   Exception: *Hazardous building ordinances and programs mitigating unreinforced masonry buildings.*

2. *The city, county, or city and county shall file the amendments, additions, or deletions expressly marked and identified as to the applicable findings. Cities, counties, cities and counties, and fire departments shall file the amendments, additions or deletions, and the findings with the California Building Standards Commission at 2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130, Sacramento, CA 95833.*

3. *Findings prepared by fire protection districts shall be ratified by the local city, county, or city and county and filed with the California Department of Housing and Community Development at 1800 3rd Street, Room 260, Sacramento, CA 95814.*

101.9 (Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.4) ~~*101.4 [For DSA-AC]*~~ ***Effective Date of this Code.*** *Only those standards approved by the California Building Standards Commission that are effective at the time an application for building permit is submitted shall apply to the plans and specifications for, and to the construction performed under, that permit. For the effective dates of the provisions contained in this code, see the History Note page of this code.*

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.4.1)
~~*101.4.1 [For DSA-AC] One hundred and eighty days after the date of publication, or as otherwise noted herein.*~~
~~*NOTE: [For DSA-AC]*~~ *For clarification purpose, the applicable sections of the Health and Safety Codes are repeated here for clarity and read as follows:*

> ***Section 18938. Application and Effective Date.*** *The building standards contained in the Uniform Fire Code, of the International Conference of Building Officials and the Western Fire Chiefs Association, Inc., the Uniform Building …*

101.10 *(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.16)* ~~*101.16 [For DSA-AC]*~~ ***Availability of Codes****.*
~~*For clarification purposes, the applicable section of the Health and Safety Code is repeated here for clarity and reads as follows: Section 18942. (d) (1). Each city, county, and city and county, including charter cities, shall obtain and maintain with all revisions on a current basis, at least one copy of the building standards and other state regulations relating to buildings published in*~~ *At least one entire copy each of Titles 8, 19, 20, 24, and 25* ~~*of the California Code of Regulations*~~ *with all revisions* ~~*These codes*~~ *shall be maintained in the office of the building official responsible for the administration and enforcement of this* ~~*part*~~ *code. See Health and Safety Code section 18942 (d) (1) & (2).*

~~*(2) This subdivision shall not apply to any city or county which contracts for the administration and enforcement of the provisions of this part with another local government agency that complies with this section.*~~

101.11 *(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.5)* ~~*101.5 [For DSA-AC]*~~ ***Format.*** *This part fundamentally adopts the* ~~*UBC*~~ *International Building Code by reference on a chapter-by-chapter basis. Such adoption is reflected in the Matrix adoption table of each chapter of this part. When the Matrix adoption tables* ~~*of a chapter of this part*~~ *make*~~*s*~~ *no reference to a specific chapter of the* ~~*UBC*~~ *International Building Code, such chapter of the* ~~*UBC*~~ *International Building Code is not adopted as a portion of this code.*

101.12 *(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.6)* ~~***101.6*** *[For DSA-AC]*~~ ***Validity.*** *If any chapter section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, contrary to statute, exceeding the authority of the state as stipulated by statutes, or otherwise inoperative, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portion of this code.*

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.17)
~~*101.17 [For DSA-AC] Application.*~~
~~*Vesting Authority. When adopted by a state agency, the provision of this code shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the State Legislature.*~~

~~*Following is a list of the state agencies that adopt building standards, the specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, and the specific statutory authority of each agency to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards of this code, unless otherwise stated.*~~

SECTION 109
DIVISION OF THE STATE ARCHITECT

109.1 Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance.
(Relocated from 2001 CBC 101.17.11) ~~*101.17.11 [For DSA-AC] DSA-AC Access Compliance, Division of the State Architect.*~~
General. ~~*To assure*~~ *The purpose of this code is to ensure that barrier-free design is incorporated in all buildings, facilities, site work and other improvements to which this code applies in compliance with state law to ensure* ~~*assure*~~ *that these improvements are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities. Additions, alterations and structural repairs in all buildings and facilities shall comply with these provisions for new buildings, except as otherwise provided and specified herein.*

The provisions of these regulations shall apply to any portable buildings leased or owned by a school district, and shall also apply to temporary and emergency buildings and facilities.

In addition, to incorporate standards at least as restrictive as those required by the federal government for barrier-free design under (1) Title III (Public Accommodations and Commercial Facilities), Subpart D (New Construction and Alteration) and Appendix A (Americans with Disabilities Act ~~*Accessibility Guidelines*~~ *Standards for Accessible Design) (see 28 C.F.R., Part 36), and (2) Title II (Public Entities), Section 35.151 (New Construction and Alterations) (see 28 C.F.R., Part 35) both from the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, and (3) under the Fair Housing Amendments of 1988. Some of these regulations may be more stringent than state law in order to meet the federal requirement.*

109.1.1 Application. *See Government Code commencing with Section 4450.*
Publicly funded buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities as follows:

~~*Note: See Government Code commencing with Section 4450.*~~

> ***109.1.1.1*** *All buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities constructed in the state by the use of state, county or municipal funds, or the funds of any political subdivision of the state.*

109.1.1.2 *All buildings, structures and facilities that are leased, rented, contracted, sublet or hired by any municipal, county, or state division of government, or by a special district.*

109.1.1.3 *All publicly funded buildings used for congregate residences or for one- or two-family dwelling unit purposes shall conform to the provisions applicable to living accommodations.*

109.1.1.4 *All existing publicly funded buildings and facilities when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such buildings or facilities. For detailed requirements on existing buildings, see Chapter 11B, Division IV.*

109.1.1.5 *With respect to buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities not requiring a building permit, building standards published in the California Building Standards Code relating to access for persons with disabilities and other regulations adopted pursuant to Government Code Section 4450, and in effect at the time construction is commenced, shall be applicable.*

109.1.2 Application. *See Health and Safety Code commencing with Section 19952.*
All privately funded public accommodations, as defined, and commercial facilities, as defined, shall be accessible to persons with ~~physical~~ disabilities as follows:
~~Note: See Health and Safety Code commencing with Section 19952~~.

Exception: *Certain types of privately funded multistory buildings do not require installation of an elevator to provide access above and below the first floor. See Chapter 11B.*

~~Note: Exceptions for multistoried buildings formerly located in this section have been moved to Chapter 11B.~~

109.1.2.1 *Any building, structure, facility, complex, or improved area, or portions thereof, which are used by the general public.*

109.1.2.2 *Any sanitary facilities which are made available for the public, clients or employees in such accommodations or facilities.*

109.1.2.3 *Any curb or sidewalk intended for public use that is constructed in this state with private funds.*

109.1.2.4 *All existing privately funded public accommodations when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such public accommodations as set forth under Chapter 11B.*

109.1.3 Application - Public Housing and Private Housing Available for Public Use.
~~Note:~~ See Government Code Sections 4450 and 12955.1 (d).

109.1.4 Enforcing Agency.

109.1.4.1 *The director of General Services where state funds are utilized for any project or where funds of counties, municipalities or other political subdivisions are utilized for the construction of elementary, secondary or community college projects.*

109.1.4.2 *The governing bodies where funds of counties, municipalities or other political subdivisions are utilized except as otherwise provided above.*

109.1.4.3 *The building department of every city, county, or city and county within the territorial area of its city, county, or city and county, where private funds are utilized. "Building department" means the department, bureau or officer charged with the enforcement of laws or ordinances regulating the erection or construction, or both the erection and construction, of buildings.*

109.1.5 Special Conditions for Persons with Disabilities Requiring Appeals Action Ratification. *Whenever reference is made in these regulations to this section, the findings and determinations required to be rendered by the local enforcing agency shall be subject to ratification through an appeals process.*

109.1.6 Authority Cited. *Government Code Section 4450.*

***109.1.7* Reference Cited.** *Government Code Sections 4450 through ~~4460~~ 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450. Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

APPENDIX CHAPTER 1
ADMINISTRATION

Proposed adoption	DSA-AC
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	X
110.2 IBC	X

110.2 Certificate issued. After the building official inspects the building or structure and finds no violations of the provisions of this code or other laws that are enforced by the department of bulding safety, the building official shall issue a certificate of occupancy that contains the following:

1. The building permit number.
2. The address of the structure.
3. The name and address of the owner.
4. A description of that portion of the structure for which the certificate is issued.
5. A statement that the described portion of the structure has been inspected for compliance with the requirements of this code for the occupancy and division of occupancy and the use for which the proposed occupancy is classified.
6. The name of the building official.
7. The edition of the code under which the permit was issued.
8. The use and occupancy, in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 3.
9. The type of construction as defined in Chapter 6.
10. The design occupant load.
11. If an automatic sprinkler system is provided, whether the sprinkler system is required.
12. Any special stipulations and conditions of the building permit.

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450. Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 2
DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	DSA-AC
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	X
202 Accessibility CA	X
202 Accessible CA	X
202 Accessible Element CA	X
202 Accessible Means of Egress IBC	X
202 Accessible Route CA	X
202 Accessible Route of Travel CA	X
202 Accessible Space CA	X
202 Adaptability CA	X
202 Adaptable Dwelling Unit CA	X
202 Aisle CA	X
202 Aisle, Employee Areas CA	X
202 Alteration (or Alter) CA	X
202 Alternate Card Reader CA	X

202 ANSI	CA	X
202 Approved	CA	X
202 Approved Testing Agency	CA	X
202 Area of Refuge	IBC	X
202 Assistive Device	CA	X
202 Automatic Door	CA	X
202 Bathroom	CA	X
202 Building	IBC	X
202 Building Entrance on an Accessible Route	CA	X
202 Building, Existing	CA	X
202 Building Official	IBC	X
202 CCR	CA	X
202 Circulation Path	CA	X
202 Closed-Circuit Telephone	CA	X
202 Commercial Facilities	CA	X
202 Common Use Areas	CA	X
202 Covered Multifamily Dwellings	CA	X
202 Cross Slope	CA	X
202 Curb Cut	CA	X
202 Curb Ramp	CA	X
202 Detectable Warning	CA	X
202 Directional Sign	CA	X
202 Disability	CA	X
202 Disabled	CA	X
202 Dormitory	IBC	X
202 Dwelling Unit	CA	X
202 Elevator, Passenger	CA	X
202 Enforcing Agency	CA	X
202 Entrance	CA	X
202 Equivalent Facilitation	CA	X
202 Existing Building	IBC	X
202 Exit	IBC	X
202 Facility (or Facilities)	CA	X
202 Free-standing Pedestal	CA	X
202 Grab Bar	CA	X
202 Grade (Adjacent Ground Elevation)	CA	X
202 Ground Floor	CA	X
202 Guard (or Guardrail)	IBC	X
202 Handrail	IBC	X
202 Health Care Provider	CA	X
202 Historical Building	CA	X
202 Hotel or Motel	CA	X
202 Independent Entity	CA	X
202 International Symbol of Accessibility	CA	X
202 Kick Plate	CA	X
202 Level Accessible Area	CA	X
202 Level Area	CA	X
202 Lift, Special Access	CA	X
202 Marked Crossing	CA	X
202 Motel	CA	X
202 Multistory Dwelling Unit	CA	X
202 Multiple-Accommodation Toilet Facility	CA	X
202 Newly Constructed	CA	X
202 Nosing (or Nose)	CA	X
202 NFPA	CA	X
202 Occupiable Space	IBC	X
202 Open Riser	CA	X
202 Operable Part	CA	X
202 Passage Door	CA	X
202 Passenger Elevator	CA	X
202 Path of Travel	CA	X
202 Pedestrian	CA	X
202 Pedestrian Grade Separation	CA	X
202 Pedestrian Ramp	CA	X
202 Pedestrian Way	CA	X
202 Permanent	CA	X

202 Permit	IBC	X
202 Persons with Disabilities	CA	X
202 Platform	IBC	X
202 Powder Room	CA	X
202 Power-assisted Door	CA	X
202 Public Accommodation	CA	X
202 Publicly Funded	CA	X
202 Public-Use Areas	CA	X
202 Public Way	IBC	X
202 Qualified Historical Building (or Property)	CA	X
202 Rail Transit Boarding Platform	CA	X
202 Ramp	CA	X
202 Reasonable Portion	CA	X
202 Recommend	CA	X
202 Remodeling	CA	X
202 Repair	IBC	X
202 Riser	CA	X
202 Running Slope	CA	X
202 Sanitary Facility	CA	X
202 Shall	CA	X
202 Shopping Center or Shopping Mall	CA	X
202 Should	CA	X
202 Sidewalk	CA	X
202 Signage	CA	X
202 Single-accommodation Sanitary Facility	CA	X
202 Site	CA	X
202 Site Development	CA	X
202 Sleeping Accommodations	CA	X
202 Slope	CA	X
202 Space	CA	X
202 Special Access Lift	CA	X
202 Stage	IBC	X
202 Stair	IBC	X
202 Stairway	IBC	X
202 Story	CA	X
202 Story, First	CA	X
202 Structure	IBC	X
202 Tactile	CA	X
202 Technically Infeasible	CA	X
202 Temporary	CA	X
202 Text Telephone	CA	X
202 Toeboard	CA	X
202 Townhouse	CA	X
202 Transient Lodging	CA	X
202 Tread	CA	X
202 Tread Depth	CA	X
202 Tread Run	CA	X
202 Type of Motor Fuel	CA	X
202 Unreasonable Hardship	CA	X
202 Vehicular or Pedestrian Arrival Points	CA	X
202 Vehicular Way	CA	X
202 Walk	CA	X
202 Wheelchair	CA	X
Wheelchair Occupant (or Wheelchair User)	CA	X
202 Work Station	CA	X

SECTION 202
DEFINITIONS

ACCESSIBILITY. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

ACCESSIBLE. ~~See Section 1102.1.~~ *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
~~***ACCESSIBLE LOCATION*** *is a location which can be reached by an employee standing on the floor, platform, runway or other permanent working area.*~~

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS. See Section 1002.1.

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. ~~See Section 1102.1~~. *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A.*

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE OF TRAVEL. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See ~~Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A and~~ Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

ACCESSIBLE SPACE. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~**ACCESSIBLE UNIT.** See Section 1102.~~

ADAPTABILITY. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNIT. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A.*

AISLE. . . .
[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.

AISLE, EMPLOYEE AREAS. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~***ALLEY*** *is any public way or thoroughfare less than 16 feet (4877 mm) but not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width that has been dedicated or deeded to the public for public use.*~~

ALTERNATE CARD READER. *See Chapter 11C, Section 1101C.1.*

ALTERATION *(or ALTER)*. . . .
[DSA-AC] "Alteration (or alter)" is any change, addition or modification in construction or occupancy or structural repair or change in primary function to an existing structure other than repair or addition.

ANSI. *[DSA-AC] "ANSI" means the American National Standards Institute~~, 1430 Broadway, New York, New York 10018~~.*

APPROVED. . . .
[DSA-AC] "Approved" means meeting the approval of the ~~enforcement~~ enforcing agency, except as otherwise provided by law, when used in connection with any system, material, type of construction, fixture or appliance as the result of investigations and tests conducted by the agency, or by reason of accepted principles or tests by national authorities or technical, health, or scientific organizations or agencies.
~~NOTES:~~
1. *See Health and Safety Code Section 17920 for "approved" as applied to residential construction and buildings or structures accessory thereto, as referenced in Section ~~101.17.9~~ 108.2.1.1.*

2. *See Health and Safety Code Section 17921.1 for "approved" as applied to the use of hotplates in residential construction referenced in Section ~~101.17.9~~ 108.2.1.1.*

3. *See Health and Safety Code Section 17921.3 for "approved" as applied to low-flush water closets in residential construction, as referenced in ~~Section 101.17.9~~ 108.2.1.1.*

4. *See Health and Safety Code Section 19966 for "approved" as applied to factory-built housing as referenced in Section ~~101.17.9~~ 108.3.2.5.*

~~*[DSA-AC]*~~
APPROVED TESTING AGENCY. *[DSA-AC] "Approved Testing Agency" is any agency, which is determined by the ~~enforcement~~ enforcing agency, except as otherwise provided by statute, to have adequate personnel and expertise to carry out the testing of systems, materials, type of construction fixtures or appliances.*

AREA OF REFUGE. See Section 1002.1.

~~***ASSEMBLY BUILDING*** *. . .*~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] Any building or structure or portion thereof used or intended to be used for the showing of motion pictures when an admission fee is charged and when such building or structure is open to the public and has a capacity of 10 or more persons.*~~

ASSISTIVE DEVICE. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A.*

AUTOMATIC DOOR. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

BATHROOM. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.2-B.*

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.
~~*[For DSA-AC]* ***BUILDING*** *is any structure as to which state agencies have regulatory power, used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy. housing or enclosure of persons, animals, chattels, equipment or property of any kind, and also includes structures wherein things may be grown, made, produced, kept, handled, stored or disposed of, and all appendages, accessories, apparatus, appliances and equipment installed as a part thereof.*~~
~~*Building" shall not include machinery, equipment or appliances installed for manufacture or process purposes only, nor shall it include any construction installations which are not a part of a building, any tunnel, mine shaft, highway or bridge, or include any house trailer or vehicle which conforms to the Vehicle Code.*~~
~~*NOTE: BUILDING shall have the same meaning as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 17920 and 18908 for the applications specified in Sections 101.17.9 and 101.17.10.*~~

BUILDING ENTRANCE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.2-B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
BUILDING, EXISTING. *[DSA-AC] "Building, Existing" is a building erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
BUILDING OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
~~***C.C.R.***~~ ***CCR.*** *[DSA-AC] "CCR" means the California Code of Regulations.*

CIRCULATION PATH. ~~See Section 1102.1.~~ *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
~~***COMMERCE*** *is travel, trade, traffic, commerce, transportation, or communication (1) within the state; (2) among several states; (3) between any foreign country or any territory or possession and any state; or (4) between points in the same state, but through another state or foreign country.*~~

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
COMMERCIAL FACILITIES. *[DSA-AC] "Commercial Facilities" are facilities that are intended for nonresidential use and whose operations will affect commerce, including factories, warehouses, office buildings, and other buildings in which employment may occur. Commercial facilities shall not include railroad locomotives, railroad freight cars, railroad cabooses, railroad cars covered under ~~Title III~~ Title II of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, or facilities that are covered or expressly exempted from coverage under the Fair Housing Amendment Act of 1988 (42 USC 3601-3631, et seq).*

~~**COMMON USE.** See Section 1102.1.~~

COMMON USE AREAS. *[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.3-C and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

COVERED MULTIFAMILY DWELLINGS. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.3-C.*

CROSS SLOPE. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.3-C and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

CURB CUT. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.3-C and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~***CURB LINE.*** *[For DSA-AC] See Chaper 11B, Section 1102B.*~~

CURB RAMP. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.3-C and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

DETECTABLE WARNING. ~~See Section 1102.1.~~ *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.4-D and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
DIRECTIONAL SIGN. *[DSA-AC] "Directional Sign" is a publicly displayed notice which indicates by use of words or symbols a recommended direction or route of travel.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
DISABILITY. *[DSA-AC] "Disability" is (1) a physical or mental impairment that ~~substantially~~ limits one or more of the major life activities of an individual, or (2) a record of such an impairment, or (3) being regarded as having such an impairment.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
DISABLED. *See "Disability".*

DORMITORY. See Section 310.2.
~~[For DSA-AC] Dormitory is a room occupied by more than two guests.~~

DWELLING UNIT. . . .
[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.4-D and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.

~~**DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, MULTI-STORY.** See Section 1102.1.~~

~~**DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, TYPE A.** See Section 1102.1.~~

~~**DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, TYPE B.** See Section 1102.~~

~~{For DSA-AC}~~
ELEVATOR, PASSENGER. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~**EMPLOYEE WORK AREA.** See Section 1102.1.~~

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
ENFORCING AGENCY. *[DSA-AC] "Enforcing Agency" is the designated department or agency as specified by statute or regulation.*

ENTRANCE. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

EQUIVALENT FACILITATION. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.5-E and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

EXISTING BUILDINGS. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See "Building, Existing."*

EXIT. See Section 1002.1. ~~*See Sec. 1005.1.*~~

FACILITY *(or FACILITIES).* ~~See Section 1102.1.~~ *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.6-F and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

FREE-STANDING PEDESTAL. *See Chapter 11C, Section 1101C.1.*

GRAB BAR ~~*[For DSA-AC].*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.7-G and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
GRADE (Adjacent Ground Elevation). *[DSA-AC] "Grade (Adjacent Ground Elevation)" is the lowest point of elevation of the finished surface of the ground, paving or sidewalk within the area between the building and the property line or, when the property line is more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the building, between the building and a line 5 feet (1524mm) from the building. See Health and Safety Code Section 19955.3 (d).*

GROUND FLOOR. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.7-G.*

GUARD *(or GUARDRAIL).* See Section 1002.1.
~~*[For DSA-AC]* ***GUARDRAIL*** *is a vertical barrier erected along the open edges of a floor opening, wall opening, ramp, platform, runway or other elevated area to prevent persons from falling off the open edge.*~~

HANDRAIL. See Section 1002.1.
~~*[For DSA-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.8-H and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*~~

HEALTH CARE PROVIDER. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
HISTORICAL BUILDING. *See "Qualified historical building or property, Chapter 34, Division II, Section 8-218-Q."*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
HOTEL (or MOTEL). *[DSA-AC] "Hotel" or "Motel" is any building containing six or more guest rooms intended or designed to be used, or which are used, rented or hired out to be occupied, or which are occupied for sleeping purposes by guests.*

INDEPENDENT ENTITY. *[DSA-AC] "Independent Entity" is a not-for-profit product safety testing and certification organization, dedicated to testing for public safety. An independent entity would operate for the testing, certification and quality assessment of products, systems and services.*

~~**INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE.** See Section 1102.1.~~

INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.9-I and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

KICK PLATE. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.11-K and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B Definitions as applicable.*

LEVEL ACCESSIBLE AREA. *See Chapter 11C, Section 1101C.1.*

LEVEL AREA. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.12-L and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

LIFT, SPECIAL ACCESS. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See "Special Access Lift" Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.12-L and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
~~***LIVING ACCOMMODATIONS*** *means any building or portion thereof having three or more apartments as defined in this code or any publicly funded building or portion thereof.*~~

MARKED CROSSING. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.13-M and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
MOTEL. *See "Hotel (or Motel)".* ~~*shall mean the same as hotel as defined in this code.*~~

MULTISTORY DWELLING UNIT. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.13-M.*

~~**MULTISTORY UNITS.** See Section 1102.1.~~

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
MULTIPLE-ACCOMMODATION TOILET FACILITY. *[DSA-AC] "Multiple-accommodation Toilet Facility" is a room that has more than one sanitary fixture, is intended for the use of more than one person at a time, and which usually is provided with privacy compartments or screens shielding some fixtures from view. A bathroom serving a hotel guest room and a privacy toilet in small offices, stores and similar locations are not included in this category.*

NEWLY CONSTRUCTED. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.14-N~~ and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B~~.*

NOSING *(or NOSE)*. . . .
[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.14-N and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.

NFPA. *[DSA-AC] "NFPA" is the National Fire Protection Association.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
~~***OCCUPIABLE*** *is a room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes, or in which occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with means of egress, light and ventilation.*~~

OCCUPIABLE SPACE. A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes or in which occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with means of egress and light and ventilation facilities meeting the requirements of this code.

OPEN RISER. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.15-O and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

OPERABLE PART. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PASSAGE DOOR. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PASSENGER ELEVATOR. . . .
[DSA-AC] See Elevator, Passenger in Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.

PATH OF TRAVEL. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PEDESTRIAN. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PEDESTRIAN GRADE SEPARATION. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PEDESTRIAN RAMP. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PEDESTRIAN WAY. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
PERMANENT. *[DSA-AC] "Permanent" shall mean facilities, which, are intended to be used for periods longer than those designated in this code under the definition of "temporary."*

PERMIT. An official document or certificate issued by the authority having jurisdiction which authorizes performance of a specified activity.

PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P.*

PLATFORM. See Section 410.2.

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
~~***PLATFORM, UNENCLOSED*** *is a horizontal, generally level and raised surface for speakers, performances, displays, etc., as distinguished from platform, which are enclosed.*~~

POWDER ROOM. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
POWER-ASSISTED DOOR. *[DSA-AC] "Power-Assisted Door" is a door used for human passage with a mechanism that helps to open the door, or relieves the opening resistance of a door, upon the activation of a switch or a continued force applied to the door itself.*

PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION. *[DSA-AC] "Public Accommodation" includes, but is not limited to, any building or facility or other specific public use facilities not listed in Items 1 through 12 if they fall into one or more of the following categories:*

1. *Places of public lodging.*
2. *Establishments serving food or drink open to public use.*
3. *Places of exhibition or entertainment open to public use.*
4. *Places of public gathering.*
5. *Sales or rental establishments open to public use.*
6. *Service establishments open to public use.*
7. *Stations used for public transportation.*
8. *Places of public display or collection.*
9. *Places of public recreation.*
10. *Places of public education.*
11. *Social service center establishments open to public use.*
12. *Places of exercise or recreation open to public use.*

Examples of public accommodations for purposes of this code shall include, but not be limited to, the following private entities:

1. An inn, hotel, motel or other place of public lodging, except for a lodging house located within a building that contains not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that is actually occupied by the proprietor of such establishment as the residence of such proprietor.
2. A restaurant, bar, or other establishment serving food or drink.
3. A motion picture house, theater, concert hall, stadium or other place of exhibition or entertainment.
4. An auditorium, convention center, lecture hall, or other place of public gathering.
5. A bakery, grocery store, clothing store, hardware store, shopping center, or other sales or retail establishment.
6. A Laundromat, dry cleaner, bank, barber shop, beauty shop, travel service, shoe repair service, funeral parlor, gas station, office of an accountant or lawyer, pharmacy, insurance office, professional office of a health care provider, hospital or other service establishment.
7. A terminal, depot, or other station used for specified public transportation.
8. A museum, library, gallery, or other place of public display or collection.
9. A park, zoo, amusement park, or other place of recreation.
10. A nursery, elementary, secondary, undergraduate, or postgraduate private school, or other place of education.
11. A day-care center, senior citizen center, homeless shelter, food bank, adoption agency or other social service center establishment.
12. A gymnasium, health spa, bowling alley, golf course, or other place of exercise.
13. A church.
14. An office building.
15. A public curb or sidewalk.

PUBLICLY FUNDED. *[DSA-AC] "Publicly Funded" for ~~For~~ the purpose of housing, all buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities constructed in the state and used or intended to be used as a public use area, as defined in Section 1107A.16-P, shall comply with the accessibility standards of Chapter 11B of this code when state, county or municipal funds, or funds of any political subdivision of the state are used.*

~~**PUBLIC ENTRANCE.** See Section 1102.1.~~

PUBLIC-USE AREAS. ~~See Section 1102.1.~~ ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PUBLIC WAY. See Section 1002.1.

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
QUALIFIED HISTORICAL BUILDING (or PROPERTY ~~STRUCTURE)~~. *See Chapter 34, Division II, Section 8-218-Q.*

RAIL TRANSIT BOARDING PLATFORM. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

RAMP. . . .
[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.18-R.

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
REASONABLE PORTION. *[DSA-AC] "Reasonable Portion" shall mean that segment of a building, facility, area, space or condition, which would normally be necessary if the activity therein is to be accessible by persons with disabilities.*

~~DSA-AC]~~
RECOMMEND. *[DSA-AC] "Recommend" does not require mandatory acceptance, but identifies a suggested action that shall be considered for the purpose of providing a greater degree of accessibility to persons with disabilities.*

[~~For DSA-AC]~~
REMODELING. *See "Alteration (or Alter)".*

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance.

~~**RESTRICTED ENTRANCE.** See Section 1102.1.~~

RISER. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.18-R and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

RUNNING SLOPE. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

[~~For DSA-AC]~~
SANITARY FACILITY. *[DSA-AC] "Sanitary Facility" is any single water closet, urinal, lavatory, bathtub or shower, or a combination thereof, together with the room or space in which they are housed.*

~~**SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY.** See Section 1102.1.~~

~~**SERVICE ENTRANCE**. See Section 1102.1.~~

SHALL. *[DSA-AC] "Shall" as used in this code means mandatory.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
SHOPPING CENTER (or SHOPPING MALL). *[For DSA-AC] See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
SHOULD. *See "Recommend".*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
SIDEWALK. *[DSA-AC] "Sidewalk" is a surfaced pedestrian way contiguous to a street used by the public. ~~See definition for "walk".~~ (As differentiated from the definition of walk in Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.23-W and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.)*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
SIGNAGE. *[DSA-AC] "Signage" is displayed verbal, symbolic, tactile, and/or pictorial information.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
SINGLE-ACCOMMODATION SANITARY FACILITY. *[DSA-AC] "Single-Accommodation Sanitary Facility" is a room that has not more than one of each type of sanitary fixture, is intended for use by only one person at a time, has no partition around the toilet, and has a door that can be locked on the inside by the room occupant.*

SITE. ~~See Section 1102.1.~~ *[DSA-AC] "Site" is a parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right of way.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
SITE DEVELOPMENT. *[DSA-AC] "Site Development" is "on-site" and "off-site" work, including, but not limited to, walks, sidewalks, ramps, curbs, curb ramps, parking facilities, stairs, planting areas, pools, promenades, exterior gathering or assembly areas and raised or depressed paved areas.*

SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.19-8 and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

SLOPE. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.19-S.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
SPACE. *[DSA-AC] "Space" is a definable area, ~~e.g.~~ for example, room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard, or lobby.*

SPECIAL ACCESS LIFT. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.19-S and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

STAGE. See Section 410.2.

STAIR. See Section 1002.1.

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
STAIRWAY. See Section 1002.1. ~~Two or more risers shall constitute a stairway.~~

STORY. *. . .*
[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11B, 1102B.

STORY, FIRST. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

STRUCTURE. That which is built or constructed.

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
TACTILE. *[DSA-AC] "Tactile" describes an object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.*

TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE. *. . .*
[DSA-AC] "Technically Infeasible" means, with respect to an alteration of a building or a facility, that it has little likelihood of being accomplished because existing structural conditions would require removing or altering a load-bearing member which is an essential part of the structural frame; or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces, or features which are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements for new construction and which are necessary to provide accessibility.

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
TEMPORARY. *[DSA-AC] "Temporary" shall mean buildings and facilities intended for use at one location for not more than one year and seats intended for use at one location for not more than 90 days.*

TEXT TELEPHONE. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

TOEBOARD. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.15-O.*

TOWNHOUSE. . . .
[DSA-AC] For applications required to provide accommodations for persons with disabilities, see Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.20-T.

TRANSIENT LODGING. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

TREAD. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.20-T and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

TREAD DEPTH. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.20-T and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

TREAD RUN. *~~[For DSA-AC]~~ See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.20-T and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~**TYPE A UNIT.** See Section 1102.1.~~

~~**TYPE B UNIT.** See Section 1102.1.~~

TYPE OF MOTOR FUEL. *See Chapter 11C, Section 1101C.1.*

~~[For DSA-AC]~~
~~***UBC*** *shall mean the most recently adopted edition of the* Uniform Building Code *as published by the International Conference of Building Officials.*~~
~~*References to other model code sections which are found in any adopted sections of the model code or Title 24, C.C.R., must be compared to the appropriate matrix adoption table to determine if the enforcing agency has adopted the model code section or a modified Title 24, C.C.R., section.*~~

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
~~**UBC STANDARDS** are those standards published in Volume 3 of the *Uniform Building Code* promulgated by the International Conference of Building Officials, as adopted by this jurisdiction. (See Chapter 35.)~~

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
UNREASONABLE HARDSHIP. *[DSA-AC] "Unreasonable Hardship" exists when the enforcing agency finds that compliance with the building standard would make the specific work of the project affected by the building standard unfeasible, based on an overall evaluation of the following factors:*

1. *The cost of providing access.*
2. *The cost of all construction contemplated.*
3. *The impact of proposed improvements on financial feasibility of the project.*
4. *The nature of the accessibility which would be gained or lost.*
5. *The nature of the use of the facility under construction and its availability to persons with disabilities.*

The details of any finding of unreasonable hardship shall be recorded and entered in the files of the enforcing agency.

VEHICULAR OR PEDESTRIAN ARRIVAL POINTS. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.22-V.*

VEHICULAR WAY. *See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

WALK. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.23-W and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
WHEELCHAIR. *[DSA-AC] "Wheelchair" is a chair mounted on wheels to be propelled by its occupant manually or with the aid of electric power, of a size and configuration conforming to the recognized standard models of the trade.*

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
WHEELCHAIR OCCUPANT (or WHEELCHAIR USER). *[DSA-AC] "Wheelchair Occupant (or Wheelchair User)" is an individual who, due to a physical impairment or disability, utilizes a wheelchair for mobility.*

~~**WHEELCHAIR SPACE.** See Section 1102.1.~~

~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
~~***WORKING LEVEL OR WORKING AREA** is a platform, walkway, runway, floor or similar area fixed with reference to the hazard. This does not include ladders or portable or temporary means used for access, repair or maintenance, provided such means are removed immediately upon completion of the work.*~~

WORKSTATION. *. . .*
[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 3
USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	**Local Building Offical**
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
302.1 IBC	**X**
310.2 (Dormitory) IBC	**X**

SECTION 302
CLASSIFICATION

302.1 General. Structures or portions of structures shall be classified with respect to occupancy in one or more of the groups listed below. A room or space that is intended to be occupied at different times for different purposes shall comply with all of the requirements that are applicable to each of the purposes for which the room or space will be occupied. Structures with multiple occupancies or uses shall comply with Section 508. Where a structure is proposed for a purpose that is not specifically provided for in this code, such structure shall be classified in the group that the occupancy most nearly resembles, according to the fire safety and relative hazard involved.

1. Assembly (see Section 303): Groups A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4 and A-5
2. Business (see Section 304): Group B
3. Educational (see Section 305): Group E
4. Factory and Industrial (see Section 306): Groups F-1 and F-2
5. High Hazard (see Section 307): Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5
6. Institutional (see Section 308): Groups I-1, I-2, I-3 and I-4
7. Mercantile (see Section 309): Group M
8. Residential (see Section 310): Groups R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4
9. Storage (see Section 311): Groups S-1 and S-2
10. Utility and Miscellaneous (see Section 312): Group U

SECTION 310
RESIDENTIAL GROUP R

310.2 Definitions. The following words …
DORMITORY. A space in a building where group sleeping accommodations are provided in one room, or in a series of closely associated rooms, for persons not members of the same family group, under joint occupancy and single management, as in college dormitories or fraternity houses.

(Relocated from CBC 310.13.1)
~~*310.13.1 [For DSA-AC] General accessibility requirements can be found in Chapters 10, 11A, 11B, 11C and 30.*~~

(Relocated from CBC 311.2.3.7)
~~*311.2.3.7 [For DSA-AC] Vehicle barriers to motor vehicle fuel dispensers. For protection of motor vehicle fuel dispensers mounted at grade, see Section 5201.5.1, Part 9, Title 24 (California Fire Code).*~~

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 4
SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
410.2 (Platform & Stage) IBC	**X**
412.1.6 CA	**X**

SECTION 406
MOTOR-VEHICLE-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

406.2 Parking Garages.
406.2.2 Clear height. The clear height of each floor level in vehicle and pedestrian traffic areas shall not be less than 7 feet (2134 mm). ~~Vehicle and pedestrian areas accommodating van-accessible parking required by Section 1106.5 shall conform to ICC A117.1.~~ *The clear height of vehicle and pedestrian areas required to be accessible shall comply with Chapter 11A or 11B, as applicable.*

SECTION 410
STAGES AND PLATFORMS

410.2 Definitions. . . .
PLATFORM. A raised area within a building used for worship, the presentation of music, plays or other entertainment; the head table for special guests; the raised area for lecturers and speakers; boxing and wrestling rings; theater-in-the-round stages; and similar purposes wherein there are no overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound. A temporary platform is one installed for not more than 30 days.

STAGE. A space within a building utilized for entertainment or presentations, which includes overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound.

SECTION 412
AIRCRAFT-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

412.1 Airport traffic control towers.
412.1.6 Accessibility. ~~Airport traffic control towers need not be accessible as specified in the provisions of Chapter 11.~~ *In air traffic control towers, an accessible route shall not be required to serve the cab and the equipment areas on the floor immediately below the cab.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 5
GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	

SECTION 508
MIXED USE AND OCCUPANCY

508.3 Mixed occupancies.
508.3.1 Accessory occupancies. …

Exceptions:
1. . . .
2. Assembly areas that are accessory to Group E occupancies are not considered separate occupancies except when applying the assembly occupancy requirements of ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapter 11B,*
3. . . .

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 9
FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY		Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY		**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments		
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below		
Adopt only those sections listed below		**X**
907.9.1 w/Exceptions #1 & #2	CA	**X**
907.9.1.1	CA	**X**
907.9.1.2	IBC	**X**
907.9.1.3 &	IBC	**X**
Table 907.9.1.3	CA	**X**
907.9.1.5	CA	**X**
907.9.2 w/Exception	CA	**X**
907.9.2.1 w/ Exception	CA	**X**

SECTION 907
FIRE ALARM AND DETECTION SYSTEMS

907.3 Manual fire alarm boxes. . . .

907.3.1 Location. . . .

907.3.2 Height. The height of the manual fire alarm boxes shall be a minimum of 42 inches (1067 mm) and a maximum of 48 inches (1219 mm), measured vertically, from the floor level to the *highest point of the* activating handle or lever of the box. *[DSA-AC] Manual fire alarm boxes shall also comply with Section 1117B.6 item 4.*

Exception: [DSA-AC] In existing buildings there is no requirement to retroactively relocate existing manual fire alarm boxes to a minimum of 42 inches and a maximum of 48 inches from the floor level to the activating handle or lever of the box.

(Relocated from 2004 CEC, 760.16 Fire Alarm Manual Pull Stations)
~~*The center of fire alarm manual pull stations shall be located 48 inches above the level of the floor, working platform, ground surface, or sidewalk.*~~

~~*Exception: Enforcement officials shall not retroactively require fire alarm initiating devices be relocated to a 48 inch height.*~~

907.9 Alarm notification appliances. . . .

907.9.1 Visible alarms. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.9.1.1 through ~~907.9.1.4~~ *907.9.1.5*.

Exceptions:

1. *In other than Group I-2 and I-2.1, visible* ~~Visible~~ alarm notification appliances are not required in alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.

2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in ~~exits as defined in Section 1002.1.~~ *enclosed exit stairways, exterior exit stairs, and exterior exit ramps*.

907.9.1.1 Public and common *use* areas. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in public *use* areas and common *use* areas*, including but not limited to:*

[Relocated from Chapter 35, Section 3505, amendments to NFPA 72]

1. *Sanitary facilities including ~~R~~restrooms, bathrooms and shower rooms*
2. *Corridors*
3. *Music practice rooms*
4. *Band rooms*
5. *Gymnasiums*

6. Multipurpose rooms
7. Occupational shops
8. Occupied rooms where ambient noise impairs hearing of the fire alarm
9. Lobbies
10. Meeting rooms
~~*11. Any other area for common use*~~
11. Classrooms

907.9.1.2 Employee work areas. Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially designed with a minimum of 20 percent spare capacity to account for the potential of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing impaired employees.

907.9.1.3 Groups I-1 and R-1. Group I-1 and R-1 sleeping units in accordance with Table 907.9.1.3 shall be provided with a visible alarm notification appliance, activated by both the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.

TABLE 907.9.1.3
VISIBLE AND AUDIBLE ALARMS

NUMBER OF SLEEPING UNITS	SLEEPING UNITS WITH VISIBLE AND AUDIBLE ALARMS
6 to 25	2
26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22
501 to 1,000	5% of total
1,001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1,000

[DSA-AC] Also see Chapter 11B Section 1111B.4.5, Table 11B-3, and Table 11B-4.

907.9.1.4 Group R-2. In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have a fire alarm system, all dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in accordance with ~~ICC A117.1~~ *NFPA 72*.

907.9.1.5 Group I-1, R-3.1 and R-4. *Protective social care facilities which house persons who are hearing impaired, shall be provided with notification appliances for the hearing impaired installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and which shall activate upon initiation of the fire alarm system or the smoke alarms.*

907.9.2 Audible alarms. Audible alarm notification appliances shall be provided and shall sound a distinctive sound that is not to be used for any purpose other than that of a fire alarm. The audible alarm notification appliances shall provide a sound pressure level of 15 decibels (dBA) above the average ambient sound level or 5 dBA above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater, in every occupied space within the building. The minimum sound pressure levels shall be: ~~70~~ *75* dBA in occupancies in Groups R and I-1; 90 dBA in mechanical equipment rooms and 60 dBA in other occupancies. The maximum sound pressure level for audible alarm notification appliances shall be ~~120~~ *110* dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. Where the average ambient noise is greater than ~~105~~ *95* dBA, visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72 and audible alarm notification appliances shall not be required.

In group I-2 occupancies, audible appliances placed in patient areas shall be only chimes or similar sounding devices for alerting staff.

Exception: Visible alarm notification appliances shall be allowed in lieu of audible alarm notification appliances in ~~critical-care~~ *patient* areas of Group I-2 occupancies.

907.9.2.1 Audible Alarm Signal. *The audible signal shall be the standard fire alarm evacuation signal, ANSI S3.41 Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal, "three pulse temporal pattern", as described in NFPA 72.*

Exception: *The use of the existing evacuation signaling scheme shall be permitted where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 10
MEANS OF EGRESS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY		Local Building Official
ADOPTING A GENCY		**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments		
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below		
Adopt only those sections listed below		**X**
1002.1 Accessible Means of Egress	IBC	**X**
1002.1 Area of Refuge	IBC	**X**
1002.1 Exit	IBC	**X**
1002.1 Guard (or Guardrail)	CA	**X**
1002.1 Handrail	IBC	**X**
1002.1 Public Way	IBC	**X**
1002.1 Stair	IBC	**X**
1002.1 Stairway	IBC	**X**
1003.1	CA	**X**
1007 (all IBC Sections w/CA amendments)	CA	**X**
1008 (1st ¶)	CA	**X**
1008.1.1	CA	**X**
1008.1.8.6 Item 4 only	CA	**X**
1008.1.8.6 Item 5.1	CA	**X**
1009 (1st ¶)	CA	**X**
1009.3 Item 5 only	CA	**X**
1009.10 (last ¶ only)	CA	**X**
1010 (1st ¶)	CA	**X**
1011.3	CA	**X**
1012(1st ¶)	CA	**X**
1013.1	IBC	**X**
1013.2	IBC	**X**
1013.3	CA	**X**
1014.4 (1st ¶)	CA	**X**
1020.1.6.2	CA	**X**

SECTION 1001
ADMINISTRATION

1001.1 General. . . .
(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1001.1)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For additional means of egress provisions adopted by DSA-AC, see Chapters 11A for public housing, 11B for public accommodations, 11C for motor vehicle fuel facilities and Chapter 34, Division II for historical buildings.*~~

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1002
DEFINITIONS

1002.1 Definitions. . . .

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any accessible point in a building or facility to a public way.

AREA OF REFUGE. An area where persons unable to use stairways can remain temporarily to await instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation.

EXIT. That portion of a means of egress system which is separated from other interior spaces of a building or structure by fire-resistance-rated construction and opening protectives as required to provide a protected path of egress travel between the exit access and the exit discharge. Exits include exterior exit doors at ground level, exit enclosures, exit passageways, exterior exit stairs, exterior exit ramps and horizontal exits.

GUARD *(or GUARDRAIL).* A building component or a system of building components located at or near the open sides of elevated walking surfaces that minimizes the possibility of a fall from the walking surface to a lower level. (Relocated from 2001 CBC 208) ~~***Guardrail*** *is a vertical barrier erected along the open edges of a floor opening, wall opening, ramp, platform, runway or other elevated area to prevent persons from falling off the open edge*~~.

HANDRAIL. A horizontal or sloping rail intended for grasping by the hand for guidance or support. (Relocated from 2001 CBC 209) ~~***[For DSA-AC]*** *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.8.H and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*~~

PUBLIC WAY. A street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a street, that has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

STAIR. A change in elevation, consisting of one or more risers.

STAIRWAY. One or more flights of stairs, either exterior or interior, with the necessary landings and platforms connecting them, to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another. (Relocated from CBC Section 220) ~~***[For DSA-AC] STAIRWAY.*** *Two or more risers shall constitute a stairway.*~~

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1003
GENERAL MEANS OF EGRESS

1003.1 Applicability. The general requirements specified in Sections 1003 through 1013 shall apply to all three elements of the means of egress system, in addition to those specific requirements for the exit access, the exit and the exit discharge detailed elsewhere in this chapter.

In addition to the requirements of this chapter, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, as applicable.

1003.3.4 Clear width. Protruding objects shall not reduce the minimum clear width of accessible routes as required in ~~Section 1104~~ *Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.8.6*.

1003.5 Elevation change. . . .

Exceptions:

1. A single step with a maximum riser height of 7 inches (178 mm) is permitted for buildings with occupancies in Groups F, H, R-2 and R-3, and Groups S and U at exterior doors not required to be accessible by ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapters 11A or 11B*.

2. A stair with a single riser or with two risers and a tread is permitted at locations not required to be accessible by ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapters 11A or 11B*, provided that the risers and treads comply with Section 1009.3, the minimum depth of the tread is 13 inches (330 mm) and at least one handrail complying with Section 1012 is provided within 30 inches (762 mm) of the centerline of the normal path of egress travel on the stair.

3. A step is permitted in aisles serving seating that has a difference in elevation less than 12 inches (305 mm) at locations not required to be accessible by ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapters 11A or 11B*, provided that the risers

and treads comply with Section 1025.11 and the aisle is provided with a handrail complying with Section 1025.13.

Any change in elevation in a corridor serving nonambulatory persons in a Group I-2 occupancy shall be by means of a ramp or sloped walkway.

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.2.10 w/ Except. 1 & w/ Except. 2)
~~1003.2.10. Building accessibility. In addition to the requirements of this chapter, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings, for persons with disabilities, shall also comply with the requirements of Chapter 11.~~
~~*EXCEPTIONS:*~~
~~*1. [For DSA/AC] For housing accessibility, see Chapter 11A.*~~
~~*2. [For DA/AC] For accessibility to public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B.*~~

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1007
ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

1007.1 Accessible means of egress required. Accessible means of egress shall comply with this section. Accessible spaces shall be provided with not less than one accessible means of egress. Where more than one means of egress is required by Section 1015.1 or 1019.1 from any accessible space, each accessible portion of the space shall be served by ~~not less than two~~ accessible means of egress *in at least the same number as required by Section 1015.1 or 1019.1. In addition to the requirements of this chapter, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings for persons with disabilities, shall also comply with the requirements of Chapters 11A or 11B, as applicable.*

Exceptions:
1. Accessible means of egress are not required in alterations to existing buildings.

2. One accessible means of egress is required from an accessible mezzanine level in accordance with Section 1007.3, 1007.4 or 1007.5 *and Chapters 11A or 11B, as applicable*.

3. In assembly spaces with sloped floors, one accessible means of egress is required from a space where the common path of travel of the accessible route for access to the wheelchair spaces meets the requirements in Section 1025.8 *and Chapters 11A or 11B, as applicable*.

1007.2 Continuity and components. Each required accessible means of egress shall be continuous to a public way and shall consist of one or more of the following components:

1. Accessible routes complying with ~~Section 1104~~ *Chapter 11A, Sections 1110A.1 and 1120A or Chapter 11B, Section 1114B.1.2, as applicable.*

2. Stairways within vertical exit enclosures complying with Sections 1007.3, ~~and~~ 1020 *and Chapter 11A, Section 1123A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4, as applicable*.

3. Exterior exit stairways complying with Sections 1007.3, ~~and~~ 1023 *and Chapter 11A, Section 1115A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4, as applicable*.

4. Elevators complying with Section 1007.4 *and Chapter 11A, Section 1124A or Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1, as applicable*.

5. Platform lifts complying with Section 1007.5 *and Chapter 11A, Section 1124A or Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.2 and 1116B.3, as applicable*.

6. Horizontal exits complying with Section 1021.

7. Ramps complying with Section 1010 *and Chapter 11A, Sections 1114A and 1122A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.5, as applicable*.

8. Areas of refuge complying with Section 1007.6.

Exceptions:
1. Where the exit discharge is not accessible, an exterior area for assisted rescue must be provided in accordance with Section 1007.8.

2. Where the exit stairway is open to the exterior, the accessible means of egress shall include either an area of refuge in accordance with Section 1007.6 or an exterior area for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1007.8.

1007.2.1 Elevators required. In buildings where a required accessible floor is four or more stories above or below a level of exit discharge, at least one required accessible means of egress shall be an elevator complying with Section 1007.4.

Exceptions:
1. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a horizontal exit and located at or above the level of exit discharge.

2. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a ramp conforming to the provisions of Section 1010.

1007.3 Exit stairways. In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, an exit stairway shall have a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum between handrails and shall either incorporate an area of refuge within an enlarged floor-level landing or shall be accessed from either an area of refuge complying with Section 1007.6 or a horizontal exit. *In addition, exit stairways shall comply with Chapter 11A, Sections 1115A and 1123A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4, as applicable*.

Exceptions:
1. Unenclosed exit stairways as permitted by Section 1020.1 are permitted to be considered part of an accessible means of egress.

2. The area of refuge is not required at unenclosed exit stairways as permitted by Section 1020.1 in buildings or facilities that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required at exit stairways in buildings or facilities equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

4. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required for exit stairways accessed from a horizontal exit.

5. Areas of refuge are not required at exit stairways serving open parking garages.

1007.4 Elevators. In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, an elevator shall comply with the emergency operation and signaling device requirements of Section 2.27 of ASME A17.1. Standby power shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2702 and 3003. The elevator shall be accessed from either an area of refuge complying with Section 1007.6 or a horizontal exit.

Exception: Elevators are not required to be accessed from an area of refuge or horizontal exit in open parking garages.

1007.5 Platform lifts. Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall not serve as part of an accessible means of egress, except where allowed as part of a required accessible route in ~~Section 1109.7, Items 1 through 9~~ *Chapter 11A, Section 1121A or Chapter 11B, Sections 1116B.2.1 through 1116B.2.4, as applicable*. Standby power shall be provided in accordance with Section 2702.2.6 for platform lifts permitted to serve as part of a means of egress.

[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.3 for additional accessible means of egress requirements at platform or special access lifts.

1007.5.1 Openness. Platform lifts on an accessible means of egress shall not be installed in a fully enclosed or fire rated shaft.

1007.6 Areas of refuge. Every required area of refuge shall be accessible from the space it serves by an accessible means of egress. The maximum travel distance from any accessible space to an area of refuge shall not exceed the travel distance permitted for the occupancy in accordance with Section 1016.1. Every required area of refuge shall have direct access to an enclosed stairway complying with Sections 1007.3 and 1020.1 or an elevator complying with Section 1007.4. Where an elevator lobby is used as an area of refuge, the shaft and lobby shall comply with Section 1020.1.7 for smokeproof enclosures except where the elevators are in an area of refuge formed by a horizontal exit or smoke barrier.

(Relocated from 1114B.2.1)
[DSA-AC] Areas of refuge ~~Areas for evacuation assistance~~ shall comply with the requirements of this code and shall adjoin an accessible route of travel complying with ~~this code~~ Section 1114B.1.2.

1007.6.1 Size. Each area of refuge shall be sized to accommodate ~~one~~ *two* wheelchair space*s that are not less than* ~~of~~ 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) *each. The total number of such 30-inch by 48-inch (762 mm by 1219 mm) spaces per story shall be not less than one for every 200 persons of calculated occupant load served by the area of refuge.* ~~for each 200 occupants or portion thereof, based on the occupant load of the area of refuge and areas served by the area of refuge.~~ Such wheelchair spaces shall not reduce the required means of egress width. Access to any of the required wheelchair spaces in an area of refuge shall not be obstructed by more than one adjoining wheelchair space.

> ***Exception**: [DSA-AC] The enforcing agency may reduce the size of each required area of refuge to accommodate one wheelchair space that is not less than 30 inches by 48 inches on floors where the occupant load is less than 200.*

1007.6.2 Separation. Each area of refuge shall be separated from the remainder of the story by a smoke barrier complying with Section 709 or a horizontal exit complying with Section 1021. Each area of refuge shall be designed to minimize the intrusion of smoke.

> **Exception:** Areas of refuge located within a vertical exit enclosure.

1007.6.3 Two-way communication. Areas of refuge shall be provided with a two-way communication system between the area of refuge and a central control point. If the central control point is not constantly attended, the area of refuge shall also have controlled access to a public telephone system. Location of the central control point shall be approved by the fire department. The two-way communication system shall include both audible and visible signals.

(Relocated from 1114B.2.2.4.2)
1007.6.3.1 ~~1114B.2.2.4.2~~ Visible Communication Method. *[DSA-AC] ~~A method of two-way communication with both visible and audible communication shall be provided between each area of evacuation assistance and the primary entry~~. A button complying with Section 1117B.6 in the area of ~~rescue assistance~~ refuge shall activate both a light in the area of ~~rescue assistance~~ refuge indicating that rescue has been requested and a light at the ~~primary entry~~ central control point indicating that rescue is being requested. A button at the ~~primary entry~~ central control point shall activate both a light at the ~~primary entry~~ central control point and a light in the area of ~~rescue assistance~~ refuge indicating that the request has been received.*

~~A telephone with controlled access to a public telephone system or another method of two-way communication shall be provided between each area of refuge and the primary entry. The fire department may approve a location other than the primary entry.~~

1007.6.4 Instructions. In areas of refuge that have a two-way emergency communications system, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted adjoining the communications system. The instructions shall include all of the following *and shall comply with 1117B.5.1 Item 2*:

> **1.** Directions to find other means of egress.
>
> **2.** Persons able to use the exit stairway do so as soon as possible, unless they are assisting others.
>
> **3.** Information on planned availability of assistance in the use of stairs or supervised operation of elevators and how to summon such assistance.

4. Directions for use of the emergency communications system.

1007.6.5 Identification. Each door providing access to an area of refuge from an adjacent floor area shall be identified by a sign complying with ~~ICC A117.1~~ *Section 1117B.5.1 Item 2*, stating: AREA OF REFUGE, and including the International Symbol of Accessibility. Where exit sign illumination is required by Section 1011.2, the area of refuge sign shall be illuminated. Additionally, tactile signage complying with ~~ICC A117.1~~ *Section 1117B.5.1 Item 1* shall be located at each door to an area of refuge.

1007.7 Signage. At exits and elevators serving a required accessible space but not providing an approved accessible means of egress, signage shall be installed indicating the location of accessible means of egress. *Signs shall comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 1117B.5.1 Items 2 and 3, as applicable.*

1007.8 Exterior area for assisted rescue. The exterior area for assisted rescue must be open to the outside air and meet the requirements of Section 1007.6.1. Separation walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 704 for exterior walls. Where walls or openings are between the area for assisted rescue and the interior of the building, the building exterior walls within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor level of the area for assisted rescue or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

1007.8.1 Openness. The exterior area for assisted rescue shall be at least 50 percent open, and the open area above the guards shall be so distributed as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

1007.8.2 Exterior exit stairway. Exterior exit stairways that are part of the means of egress for the exterior area for assisted rescue shall provide a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails.

1007.8.3 Identification. Exterior areas for assisted rescue shall have identification as required for area of refuge that complies with Section 1007.6.5.

(Relocated from 1114B.2.4)
***1007.9* Alarms/emergency warning systems/accessibility.** *If emergency warning systems are required, they shall activate a means of warning the hearing impaired. Emergency warning systems as part of the fire-alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72, as amended in Chapter 35.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1008
DOORS, GATES AND TURNSTILES

In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.2, as applicable.

1008.1.1 Size of doors. . . .

Exceptions:
1. The . . .
2. *Other than those required to be accessible by Chapter 11B,* ~~Door~~ door openings to resident sleeping units in Group I-3 occupancies shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).
3. Door . . .
4. Width . . .
5. Door . . .
6. Exterior . . .
7. In other than Group R-1 occupancies, the minimum widths shall not apply to interior egress doors within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that is not required to be ~~an Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit~~ *adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapters 11A or 11B, as applicable*.

8. Door openings required to be accessible within ~~Type B~~ *dwelling* units shall have a minimum clear width ~~of 31.75 inches (806 mm)~~ *as specified in Chapters 11A or 11B, as applicable*.

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.1.3 NOTE)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For accessibility requirements for width and height of doors in housing accessibility, see Chapter 11A, Sections 1126A.1 and 1132A.2.1, and for public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.2.2.*~~

1008.1.6 Thresholds. . . .

Exception: The threshold height shall be limited to 7.75 inches (197 mm) where the occupancy is Group R-2 or R-3; the door is an exterior door that is not a component of the required means of egress; the door, other than an exterior storm or screen door does not swing over the landing or step; and the doorway is not on an accessible route as required by ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapter 11A or 11B* and is not part of an ~~Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit~~ *adaptable or accessible dwelling unit.*

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.1.6.1 NOTE)
~~***1003.3.1.6.1 [For DSA-AC] Thresholds.***~~

~~*NOTE: For accessibility requirements for thresholds in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1126A.2, 1126A.2.1, 1132A.3 and 1132A.4, and for public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.2.4.1.*~~

1008.1.8.1 Hardware. Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on doors required to be accessible by ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B* shall not require tight grasping, tight pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.

1008.1.8.3 Locks and latches. . . .

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.1.8)
~~*[DSA-AC] Bars, grilles, grates or similar devices placed over any required exit door shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key, tool,or any special knowledge or effort. Such bars, grilles, grates or similar devices shall be equipped with an approved release device for use by the fire department only on the exterior side for the purpose of fire department emergency access, when required by the authority having jurisdiction.*~~

1008.1.8.6 Delayed egress locks. Approved, listed, delayed egress locks shall be permitted to be installed on doors serving any occupancy except Group A, E and H occupancies in buildings that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an approved automatic smoke or heat detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, provided that the doors unlock in accordance with Items 1 through 6 below. A building occupant shall not be required to pass through more than one door equipped with a delayed egress lock before entering an exit.

1. The doors unlock upon actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic ~~fire~~ detection system.

2. The doors unlock upon loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism.

3. The door locks shall have the capability of being unlocked by a signal from fire command center.

4. The initiation of an irreversible process which will release the latch in not more than 15 seconds when a force of not more than 15 pounds (67 N) is applied for 1 second to the release device. Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the vicinity of the door. Once the door lock has been released by the application of force to the releasing device, relocking shall be by manual means only. *For applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.2.5.*

Exception: Where approved, a delay of not more than 30 seconds is permitted.

5. A sign shall be provided on the door located above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the release device reading: ~~PUSH UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS.~~ *"KEEP PUSHING. THIS DOOR WILL OPEN IN 15 [30] SECONDS. ALARM WILL SOUND" . Sign lettering shall be at least 1 inch (25 mm) in height and shall have a stroke of not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).*

5.1 (Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.1.10 NOTE 1) ~~*NOTE 1: [For DSA-AC]*~~ *A tactile sign shall also be provided in Braille and raised characters, which complies with Section 1117B.5.1 Item 1.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1009
STAIRWAYS

In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4, as applicable.

1009.3 Stair treads and risers. . . .

Exceptions:

1. Alternating . . .
2. Spiral . . .
3. Aisle . . .
4. In . . .
5. See the Section 3403.4 for the replacement of existing stairways. *For applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B, Section 1134B.*

1009.10 Handrails. Stairways shall have handrails …

Exceptions:

1. Aisle stairs …
2. Stairways within …
3. Decks, patios …
4. In Group R-3 …
5. Changes in …

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.3.6.1.1 Note)
~~*{For DSA-AC} NOTE: For accessibility requirements for handrails in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1120A.6.1, and for public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4.1.1.*~~

For applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4.1.

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1010
RAMPS

In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.5, as applicable.

1010.1 Scope. . . .

Exceptions:

1. Other than ramps that are part of the accessible routes providing access in accordance with ~~Sections 1108.2 through 1108.2.3 and 1108.2.5~~ *Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B*, ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall conform with the provisions in Section 1025.11.

2. Curb ramps shall comply with ~~ICC A117.1~~ *Chapter 11A or 11B, Section 1127B.5, as applicable*.

3. Vehicle . . .

1010.6 Landings. . . .
(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.4.4 NOTE)

~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For accessibility requirements for landings in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.5.4.*~~

1010.6.5 Doorways. Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required ~~by ICC A117.1~~ *for accessibility* are permitted to overlap the required landing area *as specified in Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, 1133B.5*.

1010.9 Edge protection. . . .

Exceptions:
1. Edge protection is not required on ramps not required to have handrails, provided they have flared sides that comply with the ~~ICC A117.1~~ *Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 1127B.5* curb ramp provisions.
2. Edge . . .
3. Edge . . .

1010.10 Guards. . . .

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.4.6 NOTE)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For accessibility requirements for guardrails in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.5.7.1.*~~

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1011
EXIT SIGNS

1011.1 Where required. . . .
(Relocated from 2001 CBC1003.2.8.1)
~~**1003.2.8.1 *[For DSA-AC] Visual exit signs*.** For the purposes of Section *1003.2.8.1*, the term 'exit sign' shall mean those required signs that *visually* indicate the path of exit travel within the means of egress system.~~

1011.3 Tactile exit signs. ~~A tactile sign stating EXIT and complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided adjacent to each door to an egress stairway, an exit passageway and the exit discharge~~.
(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.2.8.6)

~~***1003.2.8.6 [For DSA-AC] Tactile exit signage.***~~ *For the purposes of Section ~~1003.2.8.6~~ 1011.3, the term "tactile exit signs" shall mean those required signs that comply with Section 1117B.5.1 Item 1.*

Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.2.8.6.1)
~~***1003.2.8.6.1 [For DSA-AC] Where required.***~~ *Tactile exit signs shall be required at the following locations:*

1. *Each grade-level exterior exit door shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the word, EXIT.*

2. *Each exit door that leads directly to a grade-level exterior exit by means of a stairway or ramp shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the following words as appropriate:*

A. *EXIT STAIR DOWN*
B. *EXIT RAMP DOWN*
C. *EXIT STAIR UP*
D. *EXIT RAMP UP*

3*. Each exit door that leads directly to a grade-level exterior exit by means of an exit enclosure that does not utilize a stair or ramp, or by means of an exit passageway shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the words, EXIT ROUTE.*

4. *Each exit access door from an interior room or area ~~to a corridor or hallway~~ that is required to have a visual exit sign, shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the words, EXIT ROUTE.*

5. *Each exit door through a horizontal exit shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the words, TO EXIT.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1012
HANDRAILS

In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4.1, as applicable.

1012.1 Where required. . . .

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.3.6.1.1 Note)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For Accessibility requirements for handrails in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1120A.4.1, and for public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.4.1.1*~~.

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1013
GUARDS

1013.1 Where required. Guards shall be located along open-sided walking surfaces, mezzanines, industrial equipment platforms, stairways, ramps and landings that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. Guards shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.7. Where glass is used to provide a guard or as a portion of the guard system, the guard shall also comply with Section 2407. Guards shall also be located along glazed sides of stairways, ramps and landings that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below where the glazing provided does not meet the strength and attachment requirements in Section 1607.7.

Exception Guards are not required for the following locations:

1. On the loading side of loading docks or piers.

2. On the audience side of stages and raised platforms, including steps leading up to the stage and raised platforms.

3. On raised stage and platform floor areas, such as runways, ramps and side stages used for entertainment or presentations.

4. At vertical openings in the performance area of stages and platforms.

5. At elevated walking surfaces appurtenant to stages and platforms for access to and utilization of special lighting or equipment.

6. Along vehicle service pits not accessible to the public.

7. In assembly seating where guards in accordance with Section 1025.14 are permitted and provided.

1013.2 Height. Guards shall form a protective barrier not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) high, measured vertically above the leading edge of the tread, adjacent walking surface or adjacent seatboard.

Exceptions:

1. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, guards whose top rail also serves as a handrail shall have a height not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from the leading edge of the stair tread nosing.

2. The height in assembly seating areas shall be in accordance with Section 1025.14.

1013.3 Opening limitations. Open guards shall have balusters or ornamental patterns such that a 4-inch diameter (102 mm) sphere cannot pass through any opening~~*up to a height of 34 inches (864 mm)*. *From a height of 34 inches*~~

~~*(864 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent* walking surfaces, a sphere 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter shall not pass.~~

Exceptions:

1. The triangular openings formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail at the open side of a stairway shall be of a maximum size such that a sphere of 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter cannot pass through the opening.

2. At elevated walking surfaces for access to and use of electrical, mechanical or plumbing systems or equipment, guards shall have balusters or be of solid materials such that a sphere with a diameter of 21 inches (533 mm) cannot pass through any opening.

3. In areas that are not open to the public within occupancies in Group I-3, F, H or S, balusters, horizontal intermediate rails or other construction shall not permit a sphere with a diameter of 21 inches (533 mm) to pass through any opening.

4. In assembly seating areas, guards at the end of aisles where they terminate at a fascia of boxes, balconies and galleries shall have balusters or ornamental patterns such that a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere cannot pass through any opening up to a height of 26 inches (660 mm). From a height of 26 inches (660 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent walking surfaces, a sphere 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter shall not pass.

5. Within individual dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, openings for required guards on the sides of stair treads shall not allow a sphere of 4.375 inches (111 mm) to pass through.

1013.4 Screen porches. . . .

1013.5 Mechanical equipment. . . .

1013.6 Roof access. . . .

(Relocated from 2001CBC 509.1 NOTE)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For accessibility requirements for guardrails in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.5.7.2.*~~

(Relocated from 2001CBC 509.2 NOTE)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For accessibility requirements for guardrails in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.5.7.3.*~~

(Relocated from 2001CBC 509.3 NOTE)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: For accessibility requirements for guardrails in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.5.7.4.*~~

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1014
EXIT ACCESS

1014.4 Aisles. . . .

In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 1133B.6, as applicable.

1014.4.1 Aisles in Groups B and M. . . .

Exception: Nonpublic aisles serving less than 50 people and not required to be accessible by ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapter 11B (see Sections 1103B.1 Exception 2 and 1123B.2 Exception)* need not exceed 28 inches (711 mm) in width.

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1020
VERTICAL EXIT ENCLOSURES

1020.1 Enclosures required. . . .
1020.1.6 Stairway floor number signs. . . .

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 1003.3.3.13.1)
1020.1.6.2 ~~***1003.3.3.13.1 [For DSA-AC] Tactile stair level identification sign.***~~ ***Tactile floor designation signs in stairways.*** ~~*Tactile stair level identification signs*~~ *When accessibility is required, tactile floor designation signs that comply with 1117B.5.1 Item 1 shall be located at the landing of each floor level,* ~~*landing*~~ *placed adjacent to the door on the latch side, in all enclosed stairways in buildings two or more stories in height to identify the floor level. At the exit discharge level, the sign shall include a raised five pointed star located to the left of the identifying floor level. The outside diameter of the star shall be the same as the height of the raised characters.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 11A
HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire California chapter	**X**
Adopt only those sections listed below	
1102A.3.1 Exception CA	**

** DSA-AC has **not** adopted section 1102A.3.1 Exception.

Both DSA-AC and HCD/1AC are proposing to adopt the same standards in Chapter 11A. DSA-AC does not adopt the Exception in Section 1102A.3.1. This chapter also includes those provisions promulgated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal (SFM). (See HCD Initial Statement of Reasons and Express Terms.)

DSA-AC is proposing adoption of this Chapter with amendment as shown in the Matrix Adoption Table. Modifications are identified below.

Sections: 1101A.1 through 1150A.2 including Figures contained in Division VII of the California Building Code.
These previously existing California amendments are intended to be brought forward to the 2007 CBC with non-substantive amendments to punctuation, capitalization, section references, feet to inches, new IBC occupancy group designations, etc. They do not represent substantive changes to the application or effect from the 2001 Triennial California Building Standards Code. The amendments provide clarity and specificity for the code user.

Section: 1118A of the California Building Code.
This previous section is proposed to be repealed by SFM. The 2006 IBC contains similar provisions in Section 1007. HCD is re-locating some of the language to that section and is providing a reference for the code user. The term "Area of Evacuation Assistance" has been revised to "Areas of Refuge" to provide consistency with proposed amendments of DSA and SFM. The amendments provide clarity and specificity for the code user.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 11B ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLICLY FUNDED HOUSING
~~*Note:*~~ *For housing accessibility, see Chapter 11A.*

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire California chapter	**X**
Adopt only those sections listed below	

Division I – NEW BUILDINGS

SECTION 1101B
SCOPE

See Chapter 1, ~~Section 101.17.11~~ Section 109.1.

1101B.1 General. *Buildings or portions of buildings shall be accessible to persons with disabilities as required by this chapter.*

1101B.2 Design. *The design and construction of accessible building elements shall be in accordance with this chapter and sections that are listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

1101B.3 Maintenance of Accessible Features.

1. *A public accommodation shall maintain in operable working condition those features of facilities and equipment that are required to be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

2. *This section does not prohibit isolated or temporary interruptions in service or access due to maintenance or repairs.*

~~***1101B.4 Dimensional Tolerances.*** *All dimensions are subject to conventional building industry tolerances for field conditions.*~~

1101B.4 Dimension Conventions. *Dimensions that are not stated as "maximum" or "minimum" are absolute.*

1101B.5 Construction and Manufacturing Tolerances. *All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where the requirement is stated as a range with specific minimum and maximum end points.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1102B
DEFINITIONS

(Relocated within Section 1102B) *For additional definitions pertinent to the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance accessibility requirements, see Chapter 2, Section 202.*

For the purpose of the chapter, certain terms are defined as follows:

ACCESSIBILITY *is the combination of various elements in a building or area, which allows access, circulation and the full use of the building and facilities by persons with disabilities.*

ACCESSIBLE *is approachable and usable by persons with disabilities in compliance with this code.*

(Relocated from Section 202-A) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT *is an element specified by the regulations adopted by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance.*

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS. *See Section 1002.1.*

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE OF TRAVEL *is a continuous unobstructed path connecting all accessible elements and spaces in an accessible building or facility that can be negotiated by a person with a severe disability using a wheelchair and that is also safe for and usable by persons with other disabilities, and that is consistent with the definition of "path of travel" in ~~Section 217~~ this section.*

(Relocated from Section 202-A) *[~~For DSA-AC~~]*
ACCESSIBLE SPACE *is a space that complies with the regulations adopted by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance.*

ADAPTABILITY *refers to the capability of spaces or facilities to be readily modified and made accessible.*

(Relocated from Section 202-A) *[~~For DSA-AC~~]*
AISLE *is a circulation path between objects such as seats, tables, merchandise, equipment, displays, shelves, desks, etc.*

(Relocated from Section 202-A) *[~~For DSA-AC~~]*
AISLE, EMPLOYEE AREAS *(as required for architectural accessibility) is a space that serves as a passage-way, which is created by architectural components such as walls, fixed cabinetry or fixtures and not moveable components such as furniture.*

AREA ~~FOR EVACUATION ASSISTANCE~~ OF REFUGE. *~~is an accessible space which is protected from fire and smoke and which facilitates a delay in egress.~~ See Section 1002.1.*

AUTOMATIC DOOR *is a door equipped with a power operated mechanism and controls that open and close the door automatically upon receipt of a momentary actuating signal. The switch that begins the automatic cycle may be a photoelectric device, floor mat or manual switch.*

(Relocated from Section 204-C) *[~~For DSA-AC~~]*
CIRCULATION PATH *is an exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians, including, but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, stairways and stair landings.*

(Relocated from Section 204-C) *[~~For DSA-AC~~]*
CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE *is a telephone with dedicated line(s) such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a facility.*

COMMON USE AREAS *are public areas where the use~~s~~ of the space is not limited exclusively to owners, residents or individual employees.*

CROSS SLOPE *is the slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (as differentiated from running slope).*

CURB CUT *is an interruption of a curb at a pedestrian way, which separates surfaces that are substantially at the same elevation.*

~~***CURB LINE*** *is a line at the face of the curb that marks the transition between the sidewalk and the gutter or roadway.*~~

CURB RAMP *is a sloping pedestrian way, intended for pedestrian traffic, which provides access between a walk or sidewalk to a surface located above or below an adjacent curb face.*

DETECTABLE WARNING *is a standardized surface or feature built into or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired persons of hazards in the path of travel. Only approved DSA-AC detectable warning products and directional surfaces shall be installed as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR). Title 24, Part 1, Articles 2, 3 and 4. Refer to CCR Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-11A and B, for building and facility access specifications for product approval for detectable warning products and directional surfaces.*

~~*NOTE:*~~ *Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are for use in residential housing evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.*

DWELLING UNIT *is a single unit of residence for a family of one or more persons. Examples of dwelling units covered by this chapter include condominiums, an apartment unit within an apartment building, and other types of dwellings in which sleeping accommodations are provided but toileting or cooking facilities are shared by occupants of more than one room or portion of the dwelling. Examples of the latter include dormitory rooms and sleeping accommodations in shelters intended for occupancy as residences for homeless persons.*

ELEVATOR, PASSENGER *is an elevator used primarily to carry passengers.*

(Relocated from Section 205-E) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
ENTRANCE *shall mean any entrance to a facility, which has a substantial flow of pedestrian traffic to any specific major function of the facility.*

EQUIVALENT FACILITATION *is an alternate means of complying with the literal requirements of these standards and specifications that provides access in terms of the purpose of these standards and specifications.* ~~*NOTES: 1.*~~ *See Section 101.2, Purpose.*

~~*2.*~~ *In determining equivalent facilitation, consideration shall be given to means that provide for the maximum independence of persons with disabilities while presenting the least risk of harm, injury or other hazard to such persons or others.*

EXIT. *See Section 1002.1.*

FACILITY (or FACILITIES) *is a building, structure, room, site, complex or any portion thereof, that is built, altered, improved or developed to serve a particular purpose.*

GRAB BAR *is a bar for the purpose of being grasped by the hand for support.*

GUARD (or GUARDRAIL)*. See Section 1002.1.*

HANDRAIL ~~*is a device to be used as a hand hold.*~~ *See Section 1002.1.*

(Relocated from Section 209-H) ~~*{FOR DSA-AC}*~~
HEALTH CARE PROVIDER *is a person or entity regulated by a state to provide professional services related to the physical or mental health of an individual and who makes such services available to the public.*

INDEPENDENT ENTITY. *See* ~~*Chapter 2, Section 210 I*~~ *Section 202.*

~~*NOTE:*~~ *Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are for use in residential housing evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.*

INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY *is that symbol adopted by Rehabilitation International's 11th World Congress for the purpose of indicating that buildings and facilities are accessible to persons with disabilities. See Chapter 11B, Figure 11B-6.*

KICK PLATE *is an abrasion-resistant plate affixed to the bottom portion of a door to prevent a trap condition and protect its surface.*

LEVEL AREA *is a specified surface that does not have a slope in any direction exceeding 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in 1 foot (305 mm) from the horizontal (2.083 percent gradient).*

LIFT, SPECIAL ACCESS. *See "Special Access Lift."*

MARKED CROSSING *is a crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.*

NEWLY CONSTRUCTED. *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.14-N.*

NOSE, NOSING, *is that portion of a tread projecting beyond the face of the riser immediately below.*

OPEN RISER *is the air space between tread projecting beyond the face of the riser immediately below.*

(Relocated from Section 216-O) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
OPERABLE PART *is a part of a piece of equipment or appliance used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate or adjust the equipment or appliance (for example, coin slot, pushbutton, handle).*

PASSAGE DOOR *is a door other than an exit door through which persons may traverse.*

(Relocated from Section 217-P) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
PATH OF TRAVEL *is a passage that may consist of walks and sidewalks, curb ramps and pedestrian ramps, lobbies and corridors, elevators, other improved areas, or a necessary combination thereof, that provides free and unobstructed access to and egress from a particular area or location for pedestrians and/or wheelchair users.*

PEDESTRIAN *is an individual who moves in walking areas with or without the use of walking assistive devices such as crutches, leg braces, wheelchairs, white cane, service animal, etc.*

(Relocated from Section 217-P) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
PEDESTRIAN GRADE SEPARATION *is a structure erected over or under an obstacle such as a freeway, roadway, street, railroad, stream, etc., and intended primarily for pedestrian use.*

PEDESTRIAN RAMP *is a sloping path of travel intended for pedestrian traffic and as differentiated from a curb ramp.*

PEDESTRIAN WAY *is a route by which a pedestrian may pass.*

PLATFORM. *See Section 410.2.*

PRIMARY ENTRY LEVEL *is the floor or level of the building on which the primary entry is located.*

PUBLIC USE AREA. *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.16-P.*

PUBLIC WAY. *See Section 1002.1.*

(Relocated from Section 219-R) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
RAIL TRANSIT BOARDING PLATFORM *is a horizontal, generally level surface, whether raised above, recessed below, or level with a transit rail, from which persons embark/disembark a fixed rail vehicle.*

RISER *is the vertical distance from the top of the tread to the top of the next higher tread.*

(Relocated from Section 219-R) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~
RUNNING SLOPE *is the slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (as differentiated from cross slope).*

(Relocated from Section 220-S)
SHOPPING CENTER (or SHOPPING MALL) *is one or more sales establishments or stores. For the purposes of this section, shopping center or shopping mall includes a covered mall building.*

SIDEWALK. *See Section 202.*

SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS *are rooms in which people may sleep; for example, dormitory and hotel or motel guest rooms or suites.*

SPECIAL ACCESS LIFT *is a hoisting and lowering mechanism equipped with a car or platform, or support that serves two landings of a building or structure and is designed to carry a passenger or passengers and (or) luggage or other material a vertical distance as may be allowed.*

STAGE. *See Section 410.2.*

STAIR. *See Section 1002.1.*

STAIRWAY. *See Section 1002.1.*

(Relocated from Section 220-S)
STORY~~*. [For DSA-AC] For purpose of accessibility, Chapter 11B, "Story"*~~ *means that portion of a building included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor next above, except that the topmost story*

shall be that portion of a building included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above. If the finished floor level directly above a basement or unused under-floor space is more than six feet (1829 mm) above grade for more than 50 percent of the total perimeter or is more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above grade at any point, the basement or unused under-floor space shall be considered as a story.

(Relocated from Section 220-S)
STORY, FIRST. *~~[For DSA-AC] For the purposes of accessibility, Chapter 11B, "First story"~~ means the lowest story in a building which qualifies as a story and which provides the basic services or functions for which the building is used. A floor level in a building having only one floor level shall be classified as a first story, if the floor level is not more than four feet (1219 mm) below grade, for more than 50 percent of the total perimeter, or more than eight feet (2438 mm) below grade at any point.*

(Relocated from Section 221-T) *~~[For DSA-AC]~~*
TEXT TELEPHONE *is machinery or equipment that employs interactive graphic (~~i.e.~~ for example, typed) communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. Text telephones can include, for example, devices known as TTYs (telecommunication display devices) or computers.*

(Relocated from Section 221-T) *~~[For DSA-AC]~~*
TRANSIENT LODGING *is a building, facility, or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities, that contains one or more dwelling units or sleeping accommodations. Transient lodging may include, but is not limited to, resorts, group homes, hotels, motels and dormitories.*

TREAD *is the horizontal member of a step.*

TREAD DEPTH *is the horizontal distance from the front to back of tread, including nosing when used.*

TREAD RUN *is the horizontal distance from the leading edge of a tread to the leading edge of an adjacent tread.*

(Relocated from Section 223-V) *~~[For DSA-AC]~~*
VEHICULAR WAY *is a route intended for vehicular traffic, such as a street, driveway or parking lot.*

WALK *is a surfaced pedestrian way not located contiguous to a street used by the public. ~~(See definition for "sidewalk".)~~ (As differentiated from the definition of sidewalk in Section 202.)*

(Relocated from Section 224-W) *~~[For DSA-AC]~~*
WORK STATION *is an area defined by equipment and/or work surfaces intended for use by employees only, and generally for one or a small number of employees at a time. Examples include ticket booths; the employee side of grocery store checkstands; the bartender area behind a bar; the employee side of snack bars, sales counters and public counters; guardhouses; toll booths; kiosk vending stands; lifeguard stations; maintenance equipment closets; counter and equipment areas in restaurant kitchens; file rooms; storage areas; etc.*

~~NOTE: For additional definitions pertinent to the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance accessibility requirements, see Chapter 2.~~

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1103B
BUILDING ACCESSIBILITY

1103B.1 General. *Accessibility to buildings or portions of buildings shall be provided for all occupancy classifications except as modified or enhanced by this chapter. Occupancy requirements in this chapter may modify general requirements, but never to the exclusion of them. Multistory buildings must provide access by ramp or elevator.*

Exceptions:

~~2.~~ 1. *Floors or portions of floors not customarily occupied, including, but not limited to, nonoccupiable or employee spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways or freight (nonpassenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair or maintenance purposes: such spaces as elevator pits and elevator penthouses, piping and equipment catwalks, and machinery rooms. ~~Stair striping shall be required on stairs.~~*

~~3.~~ 2. *The following types of privately funded multistory buildings do not require a ramp or elevator above and below the first floor:*

~~3.1~~ 2.1 *Multistoried office buildings (other than the professional office of a health care provider) and passenger vehicle service stations less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) per story.*

~~3.2~~ 2.2 *Any other privately funded multistoried building that is not a shopping center, shopping mall or the professional office of a health care provider, and that is less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) per story if a reasonable portion of all facilities and accommodations normally sought and used by the public in such a building are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

1103B.2 Distance to elevators. *In new construction of buildings and only where elevators are required, pursuant to Section 1103B.1, and which exceed 10,000 square feet on any floor, an accessible means of vertical access via ramp, elevator or lift shall be provided within 200 feet of travel of each stairs and each escalator. In existing buildings that exceed 10,000 square feet on any floor and in which elevators are otherwise required pursuant to Section 1103B.1, whenever a newly constructed means of vertical access is provided via stairs or an escalator, an accessible means of vertical access via ramp, elevator or lift shall be provided within 200 feet of travel of each new stairs or escalator.*

~~EXCEPTIONS:~~ ***Exception:***

1. *~~This section shall not apply with respect to stairs~~ Stairs used solely for emergency egress.*

~~2.~~ *~~Floors or portions of floors not customarily occupied, including, but not limited to, nonoccupiable or employee spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways or freight (nonpasssenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair or maintenance purposes: such spaces as elevator pits and elevator penthouses, piping and equipment catwalks and machinery rooms. Stair striping shall be required on stairs.~~*

~~3.~~ *~~The following types of privately funded multistory buildings do not require a ramp or elevator above and below the first floor:~~*

~~3.1~~ *~~Multistoried office buildings (other than the professional office of a health care provider) and passenger vehicle service stations less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) per story.~~*

~~3.2~~ *~~Any other privately funded multistoried building that is not a shopping center, shopping mall or the professional office of a health care provider, and that is less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) per story if a reasonable portion of all facilities and accommodations normally sought and used by the public in such a building are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.~~*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1104B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP A OCCUPANCIES

1104B.1 General. *All Group A Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

1104B.2 Assistive-listening Systems in Assembly Areas. *Assembly areas, conference and meeting rooms shall provide assistive-listening systems for persons with hearing impairments as provided in this section.*

Exception: *This section does not apply to systems used exclusively for paging, or background music, or a combination of these two uses.*

1. Number of personal receivers required. *The minimum number of receivers to be provided shall be equal to 4 percent of the total number of seats, but in no case less than two.*

2. Types of listening systems. *Types of assistive-listening systems include, but are not limited to, audio-induction loops, radio frequency systems (AM or FM) and infrared transmission.*

3. Location. *If the assistive-listening system provided is limited to specific areas or seats, then such areas or seats shall be within a 50-foot (15 240 mm) viewing distance of the performing area.*

4. Signage. *A sign shall be posted in a prominent place (for example, a customer service counter, ticket booth, or assembly area entrance) indicating the availability of assistive-listening devices. The sign complying with Section 1117B.5, Items 2 and 3 shall include the international symbol of access for hearing loss ~~and~~ complying with Figure 11B-14C and include wording that states "Assistive-listening System Available". ~~See Figure 11B-14.~~*

5. Fees and charges. *Nothing in this section shall preclude a facility charging for such assistive-listening system its usual fee for audiovisual equipment. However, no surcharge may be placed directly on any particular individual with a disability or any group of individuals with disabilities to cover the costs of such equipment.*

6. ~~Portable~~ Permanent and portable systems. *Permanently installed assistive-listening systems are required in areas if (1) they accommodate at least 50 persons or if they have audio-amplification systems, and (2) they have fixed seating. If portable assistive-listening systems are used for conference or meeting rooms, the system may serve more than one room. ~~However, permanently installed assistive-listening systems are required in areas if (1) they accommodate at least 50 persons or if they have audio-amplification systems, and (2) they have fixed seating.~~*

1104B.3 Auditoriums, Assembly Halls, Theaters and Related Facilities.

1104B.3.1 Seating. *In all assembly places where seating is provided, there shall be spaces for persons using wheelchairs and semi ambulant persons, as provided in this section.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings and facilities when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with the seating requirements of this code would create an unreasonable hardship, such requirements shall not apply. When the unreasonable hardship finding is applied, at least 1 percent of the total seating provided shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities who use wheelchairs and such seating shall comply with the level requirements and the individual space requirements of this code.*

2. *When an existing theater is subdivided into more than one facility having upper levels not accessible by ramp or elevator, and the enforcing agency determines that full compliance with this code would create an unreasonable hardship, such upper levels need not be made accessible, provided all facilities at grade are accessible and any event, showing of motion pictures or other activities made available to the public in all of the facilities are scheduled to ensure that all such functions are available to the public in the accessible facility.*

1104B.3.2 Accessibility to key facilities. *Seating for persons with disabilities shall be accessible from the main lobby or from a primary entrance, together with related toilet facilities.*

1104B.3.3 Variety of locations. *Accessible seating or accommodations in places of public amusement and resort, including theaters, concert halls and stadiums, but not including hotels and motels, shall be provided in a variety of locations so as to provide persons with disabilities a choice of admission prices otherwise available to members of the general public.*

1104B.3.4 Wheelchair spaces.

1. *The number of such spaces is as shown in Table 11B-1.*

TABLE 11B-1 – WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACES

SEATING CAPACITY	*NO. OF WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACES*
4 to 26	*1*
27 to 50	*2*
51 to 300	*4*
301 to 500	*6*

In addition, 1 percent, but not less than one, of all fixed seats, shall be aisle seats with no armrests on the aisle side, or removable or folding armrests on the aisle side. Each such seat shall be identified by a sign or marker. Signage notifying patrons of the availability of such seats shall be posted at the ticket office.

2. *When the seating capacity exceeds 500, one additional wheelchair seating space shall be provided for each total seating capacity increase of 100.*

3. *The ground or floor at spaces shall be level and shall comply with Section 1124B.*

1104B.3.5 Placement of wheelchair locations. *Wheelchair areas shall be an integral part of any fixed seating plan, and shall be arranged so as to provide persons with disabilities a choice of admission prices and lines of sight comparable to those for members of the general public. Each wheelchair area shall adjoin an accessible route which shall also serve as a means of egress in case of emergency. At least one companion fixed seat shall be provided next to each wheelchair seating area. When the seating capacity exceeds 300, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in more than one location in addition to complying with Section 1104B.3.3.*

> ***Exception:*** *Accessible viewing positions where seating capacity is less than 300 may be clustered for bleachers, balconies and other areas having sight lines that require slopes of greater than 5 percent. Equivalent accessible viewing positions may be located on levels having accessible egress.*

1104B.3.6 Size of wheelchair location. *Each wheelchair location shall provide minimum clear floor or ground space as shown in Figure 11B-15, and shall adjoin an egress aisle on at least one side.*

1104B.3.7 Removable seats. *Readily removable seats may be installed in these wheelchair spaces when such spaces are not required to accommodate wheelchair users.*

1104B.3.8 Seating for semi-ambulant individuals. *In addition to spaces provided for wheelchair users as noted in Sections 1104B.3.4 through 1104B.3.7 above, there shall be provided seating for semi-ambulant individuals. The number of such seating shall be equal to at least 1 percent of the total seating and shall be no fewer than two. Such seats shall provide at least 24 inches (610 mm) clear leg space between the front of the seat to the nearest obstruction or to the back of the seat immediately in front.*

1104B.3.9 Life safety. *In determining the location of seating for persons with disabilities, life safety shall be considered, and all seating provided must comply with the fire and panic safety requirements of the state fire marshal.*

1104B.3.10 Access to performing areas. *An accessible route shall connect wheelchair seating locations with performing areas, including stages, arena floors, dressing rooms, locker rooms and other spaces used by performers.*

1104B.3.11 Stages, enclosed and unenclosed platforms, and orchestra pits. *Stages, enclosed and unenclosed platforms and orchestra pits shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

> ***Exceptions:***
>
> ***1.*** *When the enforcing agency finds that requiring compliance with this code, for an enclosed or unenclosed platform or depressed area not more than 24 inches (610 mm) above or below an adjacent accessible level, would create an unreasonable hardship, the enclosed and unenclosed platform or depressed area shall be made accessible by a portable ramp with a slope not exceeding 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope).*
>
> ***2.*** *In existing buildings and facilities, all stages, enclosed or unenclosed platforms, and orchestra pits need not be accessible when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this code would create an unreasonable hardship.*

1104B.3.12 Ticket booths. *Customer and employee sides of ticket booths and of concession and refreshment sales facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

1104B.3.13 Miscellaneous areas. *Public toilets and other public areas shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

1104B.4 Stadiums, Grandstands, Bleachers, Athletic Pavilions, Gymnasiums and Miscellaneous Sport-related Facilities.

1104B.4.1 Spectator seating. *Spectator seating shall comply with Section 1104B.3.*

1104B.4.2 Ticket booth. *The customer side of a ticket booth shall be, and the employee side may be, accessible.*

1104B.4.3 Participation areas. *Participation areas shall be accessible to persons with disabilities, including the following listed and similar activity areas:*

> ***1.*** *Tennis, racquetball and handball courts.*
>
> ***2.*** *Gymnasium floor areas and general exercise rooms.*
>
> ***3.*** *Basketball, volleyball and badminton courts, and bowling lanes.*

4. *Swimming pool deck areas must be accessible, and a mechanism to assist persons with disabilities in gaining entry into the pool and in exiting from the pool shall be provided. Such a mechanism may consist of a swimming pool lift device as long as the device meets all of the following criteria:*

4.1 *Have a seat that meets all of the following:*

4.1.1 *The seat must be rigid;*

4.1.2 *The seat must be not less than 17 inches (423 mm) and not more than 19 inches (483 mm), inclusive of any cushioned surface that might be provided, above the pool deck;*

4.1.3 *The seat must have two armrests. The armrest on the side of the seat by which access is gained shall be either removable or fold clear of the seat;*

4.1.4 *The seat must have a back support that is at least 12 inches (305 mm) tall;*

4.1.5 *The seat must have an occupant restraint for use by the occupant of the seat, and the restraint must meet the standards for operable controls in compliance with Section 1117B.6, ~~with~~ Items 1 through 4.*

4.2 *Be capable of unassisted operation from both the deck and water levels.*

4.3 *Be stable and not permit unintended movement when a person is getting into or out of the seat.*

4.4 *Be designed to have a live-load capacity of not less than 300 pounds.*

4.5 *Be positioned so that, if the pool has water of different depths, it will place the operator into water that is at least three feet (914 mm) deep.*

4.6 *Lower the operator at least 18 inches (457 mm) below the surface of the water.*

5. *Athletic team rooms and facilities, playing fields and running tracks.*

1104B.4.4 Clubrooms. *Clubrooms shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

1104B.4.5 Sanitary and locker facilities. *Where spectator and/or participant sanitary and/or locker facilities are provided, they shall conform with the requirements in Sections 1115B and 1116B.*

Exceptions:

1. *Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided through the use of other methods or materials.*

2. *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency finds that compliance with regulations would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when all of the following minimum conditions are met:*

2.1 *When the total seating does not exceed 5,000 at least 1 percent of such seating shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities. When the total seating provided exceeds 5,000, one additional seat for each 2,000 seats provided over 5,000 shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

2.2 *Sanitary facilities, ticket booths, clubrooms, concessions and refreshment facilities be accessible.*

2.3 *One of each type of participation area is usable and accessible.*

1104B.5 Dining, Banquet and Bar Facilities.

1. General. *Dining, banquet, and bar facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities as provided in this section.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *In existing buildings, these regulations shall not apply when legal or physical constraints would not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

2. Entrance. *Access to these facilities shall be provided at entrances and exits as required by Section 1133B.1.1.*

3. Functional activity. *Wheelchair access shall be provided to all areas where each type of functional activity occurs.*

4. Seating. *Each dining, banquet and bar area shall have one wheelchair seating space for each 20 seats, with at least one minimum wheelchair seating space per functional area. Such seating shall be designed and arranged to permit use by wheelchair occupants, and shall comply with Section 1122B, "Fixed or Built-in Seating, Tables, and Counters." Access to such seating spaces shall be provided with main aisles not less than 36 inches (914 mm) clear width. Accessible seating spaces shall be integrated with general seating to allow a reasonable selection of seating area and to avoid having one area specifically highlighted as the area for persons with disabilities. The ratio of accessible seating is based on the total number of seats provided.*

5. Food service aisles. *Food service aisles shall be a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) of clear width with a preferred width of 42 inches (1067 mm) where passage of stopped wheelchairs by pedestrians is desired. Tray slides shall be mounted no higher than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor. If self-service shelves are provided, a reasonable portion must be within the ranges shown in Figure 11B-16.*

6. Tableware areas. *Tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverage display shelves, and dispensing devices shall comply with Section 1122B.4. See Figure 11B-17.*

7. Restrooms. *Restrooms and powder rooms shall conform to requirements in Section 1115B.*

8. Food preparation areas. *Access to food preparation areas shall comply with the provisions for entrance doors and doorways in Section ~~1004~~ 1008, and aisles in Sections ~~1004.3.2.1 and 1004.3.2.2~~ 1014.4 and 1014.4.1.*

1104B.6 Religious Facilities.

1104B.6.1 General. *Religious facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities as provided in this section.*

Exception: *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

1104B.6.2 Sanctuary. *Sanctuary areas shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

1104B.6.2.1 Wheelchair *seating spaces in these areas shall conform to the requirements in Section 1104B.3.1.*

1104B.6.2.2 *Wheelchair access shall be provided to raised platforms, choir rooms, choir lofts, performing areas and other similar areas.*

Exception: *In existing buildings, these regulations shall not apply to choir lofts when the enforcing agency determines that such compliance would create an unreasonable hardship.*

1104B.6.3 Assembly areas. *Assembly areas shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities. Enclosed and unenclosed platforms and stages in assembly areas shall conform to these requirements.*

1104B.6.4 Classrooms and offices. *Classrooms and offices shall have entry doors that conform to the requirements in Chapter 10.*

1104B.6.5 Sanitary facilities. *Sanitary facilities shall conform to the requirements in Section 1115B.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1105B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP B OCCUPANCIES

Group B Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

3. *For floors and levels in new and existing buildings, see Section 1120B.*

1105B.1 General. *The provisions of this section apply to the specified types of facilities and identify specific requirements of accessibility and usability which shall be provided for each of the listed occupancy uses.*

1105B.2 Group B Occupancies. *Group B Occupancies used for assembly purposes, but having an occupant load of less than 50, shall conform to the requirements as specified in Sections 1105B, 1107B and 1110B. ~~NOTE:~~ For floors and levels in dining, banquet and bar facilities, see Section 1120B.*

1105B.3 Office Buildings and Personal and Public Service Facilities. *Office buildings and personal and public service facilities shall conform to the provisions of this section.*

1105B.3.1 Facilities covered. *Facilities covered in this section are those that are used by the public as customers, clients, visitors or which are potentially places of employment and shall include, but not be limited to, the following requirements:*

1. *All types of general and specialized business professional offices, including those related to professional medicine or dentistry, insurance, real estate, attorneys, credit bureaus, consultants, counseling and accounting.*

2. *All types of sales establishments, including outlets for all general and special merchandise and equipment, including personal and household furnishings and supplies, foods, sporting equipment, office supplies, vehicles and related parts and supplies, building materials, and pet shops.*

3. *All personal and public service facilities, including banks, savings and loan companies, credit unions, newspaper and printing establishments, photographic studios, launder mats, cleaning and laundry outlets, veterinarian clinics and hospitals, automobile rental agencies, travel bureaus, public utility facilities, police stations and detention facilities, courtrooms and fire stations.*

1105B.3.2 Business and professional offices. *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

1. *Client and visitor areas and office areas, together with related toilet rooms.*

2. *Conference rooms, counseling rooms or cubicles and similar areas.*

3. *Employee work areas shall have a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) ~~wide~~ clear width access, except as modified in other portions of these regulations. See Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*

4. *Professional medical and dental offices shall be made accessible and shall also comply with Section 1109B.*

1105B.3.3 Personal and public service facilities. *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

1. *Client and visitor areas, office areas, and related toilet rooms shall be made accessible.*

2. *Employee work areas shall have 36 inches (914 mm) ~~wide~~ clear width access, except as modified in other portions of these regulations. See Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*

3. *Automated teller machines used by a financial institution and its customers for the primary purposes of executing financial transactions. See Section 1117B.7.*

1105B.3.4 Public utility facilities. *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

1. *Office areas, meeting rooms and similar areas together with related toilet rooms shall be made accessible.*

2. *Public tour areas, to the extent that such public tours are conducted through or about a facility, or where the public is permitted to walk in such areas, shall provide accessibility in those portions of the facility and grounds where this occurs.*

Exceptions:

1. *Facilities located in operational areas which would not have any reasonable availability to or usage by persons who use wheelchairs for mobility are not subject to the wheelchair accessibility requirements of these regulations.*

2. *When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this subsection would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such provision shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

3. *Visitor overlook facilities, orientation areas and similar public-use areas, and any sanitary facilities that serve these facilities shall be made accessible.*

4. *Where public parking is provided, spaces shall be provided for persons with disabilities as specified in Sections 1129B and 1130B.*

1105B.3.5 Police department, law enforcement, fire department facilities and courtrooms. *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

1. *Office areas, conference rooms, classrooms, dispatch rooms and similar areas, along with related sanitary facilities, shall be made accessible.*

2. *Detention-area visitor room shall be made accessible.*

3. *At least one detention cell facility with supporting sanitary facilities shall be made accessible.*

4. *Courtroom areas, including the judge's chambers and bench, counsel tables, jury box, witness stand and public seating area shall be made accessible.*

1105B.3.6 Miscellaneous general standards.

1. *Circulation aisles and pedestrian ways shall be sized according to functional requirements and in no case shall be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width.*

2. Storage areas. *The doorway providing access to all such areas shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width. Storage areas shall be made accessible in the number and dimensions provided in Section 1125B.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1106B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP E OCCUPANCIES

1106B.1 General. *Group E Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *In existing buildings, where the enforcing agency determines that, because of physical constraints, compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship, these regulations shall not apply. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

1106B.2 Laboratory Rooms. *Laboratory rooms shall have at least one workstation and at least 5 percent of all workstations accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

> ***Exception:*** *Where the enforcing agency determines that it would create an unreasonable hardship to require compliance with these regulations for special-use rooms such as laboratory preparation rooms, supply rooms, small research laboratories, and areas containing specialized equipment not readily usable by persons with particular disabilities, such facilities need not comply with these regulations, except that a clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) shall be maintained into such rooms.*

1106B.3 Teaching Facility Cubicles, Study Carrels, etc. *Teaching facility cubicles, study carrels, etc., shall have 5 percent, but always at least one cubicle or carrel in each group (language, dental, audiovisual, typing, drafting, darkrooms, etc.) made accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities in compliance with Section 1118B, "Space Allowance and Reach Ranges" and Section 1122B, "Fixed or Built-in Seating, Tables, and Counters."*

1106B.4 Library General Use Areas.

1. General. *Library general use areas such as those housing card files, book stacks, periodicals, reading and reference areas, information desks, circulation counters, etc., shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

2. Open book stacks. *Open book stacks (those available for customer use) may be of normal height, and shall have main aisles no less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in clear width and side, range and end aisles no less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width.*

> ***Exceptions:***
>
> ***1.*** *In existing buildings, shelving in the amount of not more than 15 percent of the total amount of library shelving may be located on an inaccessible mezzanine area.*
>
> ***2.*** *In existing buildings, multitiered, closed book stacks (those restricted to employee use) are exempt from these accessibility standards.*
>
> ***3. Height of book shelves.*** *Unless an attendant is available to assist persons with disabilities, all book shelving shall be located not more than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.*
>
> ***4. Card catalogs.*** *Reach heights at card catalogs and magazine displays shall comply with Section 1118B, with a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) preferred irrespective of reach allowed.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1107B
FACTORIES AND WAREHOUSES

Factories and warehouses shall conform to the provisions of this section, Section 1103B.1 and Section 1103B.1, Exception ~~3~~ 2, for multistory buildings.

> ***Exception:*** *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

1107B.1 Factories.

1. *Major or principal floor areas shall be made accessible.*

2. *Office areas shall be made accessible.*

3. *Sanitary facilities serving these areas shall be made accessible.*

1107B.2 Warehouses.

1. *Miscellaneous warehousing areas which are located on the floor nearest grade and those areas on other floors that are otherwise provided with access by level entry, ramp or elevator shall be made accessible.*

2. *Office areas shall be made accessible.*

3. *Sanitary facilities serving these areas shall be made accessible.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1108B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP H OCCUPANCIES

1108B.1 General. *Group H Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing Group H Occupancies, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation and protection are provided.*

2. *In existing Group H Occupancies, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints prevent compliance with these building standards or the provisions of equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

1108B.2 Accessible Sanitation Facilities. *Accessible sanitation facilities in all Group H Occupancies shall be provided as specified in this chapter.*

1108B.3 Accessible Routes. *Entrances, stairs, ramps, doors, turnstiles, corridors, walks and sidewalks and hazards shall provide accessibility as specified in Section 1133B.*

1108B.4 Accessible Floors and Levels. *Accessible floors and levels shall comply with the requirements specified in this chapter.*

1108B.5 Employee Work Areas. *Employee work areas shall be accessible by means of a 36 inch-minimum (914 mm) aisle width and a 32 inch-minimum (813 mm) clear opening door width, as specified in Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*

1108B.6 *Accessible facilities covered in this chapter are those that are used by the public as customers, clients, visitors or which are potential places of employment.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1109B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP I OCCUPANCIES

1109B.1 General. *All Group I Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

Exception: *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

1109B.2 Entrance. *At least one accessible entrance shall be protected from the weather by canopy or roof overhang. Such entrances shall incorporate a passenger loading zone. Passenger loading zones shall provide an access aisle at least 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and 20 feet (6096 mm) long adjacent and parallel to the vehicle pull-up space. If there are curbs between the access aisle and the vehicle pull-up space, then a curb ramp complying with Chapter 11B shall be provided. Vehicle standing spaces and access aisles shall be level with surface slopes not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2% slope) in all directions. Minimum vertical clearance of 114 inches (2896 mm) at accessible passenger loading zones and along vehicle access routes to such areas from site entrances shall be provided.*

Exception: *Clinics and other medical facilities that are not intended for patient stays of 24 hours or more, and that are located above the first story of a building, and that do not have a dedicated entrance from the exterior of the building at the first story.*

1109B.3 Patient Bedrooms and Toilet Rooms. *Patient bedrooms and associated toilet facilities shall be made accessible as follows:*

1. *Long-term-care facilities, including skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities, bed and care, and nursing homes shall have at least 50 percent of patient bedrooms and toilet rooms, and all public-use and common-use areas, accessible.*

2. *General-purpose hospitals, psychiatric facilities, and detoxification facilities shall have at least 10 percent of patient bedrooms and toilets, and all public-use and common-use areas, accessible.*

3. *Hospitals and rehabilitation facilities that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, or units within either that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, shall have all patient bedrooms and toilets and all public-use and common-use areas accessible.*

1109B.4 Patient Bedroom Areas. *Accessible patient bedrooms shall comply with the following requirements:*

1. *Each bedroom shall have a turning space measuring 60 inches (1524 mm) clear in diameter, or that is a T-shaped space complying with Figure 11B-12. In rooms with two beds, it is preferable that this space be located between beds.*

2. *Each bedroom shall have a minimum clear floor space of 36 inches (914 mm) along each side of the bed, and shall provide an accessible route to each side of the bed.*

3. *Each bedroom shall have an accessible door that complies with Section 1133B.2.*

1109B.5 Patient Toilet Rooms. *Patient toilet rooms required to be accessible shall comply with Section 1115B.*

1109B.6 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas. *Diagnostic and treatment areas and, where applicable, at least one dressing room, sanitary facility, etc., for each unit or suite, shall be made accessible.*

1109B.7 Waiting Areas, Offices and Sanitary Facilities. *Waiting areas, offices and sanitary facilities serving them shall be made accessible as covered in other portions of these standards.*

1109B.8 Office and Suites. *In buildings that house offices and suites of physicians, dentists, etc., all such offices or suites shall be made accessible, subject to other provisions of these regulations.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1110B
ACCESS FOR GROUP M OCCUPANCIES

1110B.1 Sales.

1110B.1.1 General areas. *General sales, display and office areas together with related toilet rooms shall be made accessible.*

1110B.1.2 Work areas. *Sales employee workstations shall be located on accessible levels, and the customer side of sales or check-out stations shall be accessible. Employee work areas shall be sized and arranged to provide access to employees in wheelchairs.*

1110B.1.3 Check stands. *In new construction, check stands, including service counters requiring a surface for transactions, shall be made accessible by providing a 36-inch (914 mm) aisle on the customer side of the check stand. Where quick check stands are provided, at least one shall be accessible. Where regular check stands are provided, the number of check stands that are accessible shall be as shown in Table 11B-2.*

TABLE 11B – 2-CHECKSTANDS

NUMBER OF REGULAR CHECKSTANDS	*NUMBER TO BE ACCESSIBLE*
1 to 4	*1*
5 to 8	*2*
9 to 15	*3*
over 15	*3 plus 20% of additional aisles*

In new and existing construction, accessible check stands shall provide a clear checkout aisle width of 36 inches (914 mm) with a maximum adjoining counter height not exceeding 38 inches (965 mm) above the finish floor. The top of the counter lip shall not exceed 40 inches (1016 mm) above the finish floor. Accessible check-stands shall always be open to customers with disabilities and shall be identified by a sign clearly visible to those in wheelchairs. The sign shall display the international symbol of accessibility in white on a blue background and shall state "This check stand to be open at all times for customers with disabilities".

In existing buildings, at least one checkout aisle shall be accessible in facilities with less than 5,000 square feet (465 m2) of selling space. In facilities of 5,000 square feet (465 m2) or more of selling space, at least one of each design of checkout aisle shall be made accessible when altered until the number of accessible checkout aisles of each design equals the number required in new construction.

~~NOTE:~~ Examples of checkout aisles of different design include those which are specifically designed to serve different functions. Different design includes, but is not limited to, the following features: length of belt or no belt, or permanent signage designating the aisle as an express lane.

1110B.1.4 Point-of-sale machines. *All point-of-sale machines used by customers for the primary purpose of executing transactions between the business entity and the customer shall comply with Section 1117B.7.*

1110B.1.5 Turnstiles. *See Section 1133B.2.3.4.*

1110B.1.6 Theft-prevention barriers. *Where shopping cart theft prevention barriers are used, they shall conform to the following requirements:*

1. *Each entrance and exit provided for public use shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

2. *Shopping cart barriers located at a public entrance or exit shall be designed to provide a clear, unobstructed opening at least 32 inches (813 mm) in width for ingress and egress of persons with disabilities.*

3. *Where gates are used, they shall open in the direction of travel, provide a clear unobstructed opening 32 inches (813 mm) in width and be maintained unlocked during business hours. Gates shall not operate a publicly audible alarm system or require more than 5 foot-pounds of force (22.2 N·m).*

4. *Where a clear unobstructed opening is provided, a level area is required on both sides of the clear opening or gate which extends a minimum of 44 inches (1118 mm) on each side of the opening and is at least 48 inches (1219 mm) in width.*

5. *Where a gate is used, the level area on both sides of the clear opening or gate shall be a minimum of 60 inches (1524 mm) in width and extend a minimum of 60 inches (1524 mm) (measured from the gate in a closed position) in the direction of the gate swing. The level area opposite the gate swing shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in width and extend a minimum of 42 inches (1067 mm).*

6. *Where a gate is used, the bottom of the gate shall be within 3 inches (76 mm) of the surface of the path of travel. The surface of the gate on each side shall be smooth to present no hazard to persons with disabilities using the gate and shall be structurally adequate to allow it to be opened with the wheelchair foot pedals.*

7. *The path of travel to and through the clear opening or gate shall be designed to prevent barriers from obstructing it and shall be continuously maintained unobstructed during business hours. Also, the design shall specifically prevent parked vehicles from obstructing ingress and egress.*

8. *Interior and exterior pedestrian traffic barriers (posts, rails, turnstiles, etc.) shall allow unobstructed travel for persons with disabilities through a 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening.*

1110B.1.7 Fitting and dressing rooms. *Where fitting or dressing rooms are provided for male or female customers, patients, employees, or the general public, 5 percent, but never less than one, of dressings rooms for each type of use in each cluster of dressing rooms shall be accessible.*

- *Entry doors shall conform to the requirements of Section 1133B.2 and aisles leading to such doors shall conform to Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*

- *The bottom of mirrors provided for use by persons with disabilities shall not be greater than 20 inches (508 mm) from the floor. Mirrors to be used by persons with disabilities shall be full-length, measuring at least 18 inches (457 mm) wide by 54 inches (1372 mm) high, and shall be mounted in a position affording a view to a person on the bench as well as to a person in a standing position.*

- *Clothing hooks shall be located not greater than 48 inches (1219 mm) from the floor.*

- *Every accessible dressing room shall have a 24-inch by 48-inch (610 mm by 1219 mm) bench fixed to the wall along the longer dimension. The bench shall be mounted 17 to 19 inches (432 to 483 mm) above the finish floor. Clear floor space shall be provided alongside the bench to allow a person using a wheelchair to make a parallel transfer onto the bench. The structural strength of the bench and attachments shall comply with Section 1115B.8. The minimum clear space within the room shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) in width and length. No door shall encroach into the required space.*

Exceptions:
1. *Minor specialized display areas that do not exceed 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) in floor area and to which the general public is excluded need not be made accessible.*

2. *Offices in sales facilities that do not exceed 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) in total area, that are located on nonaccessible levels, need not be made accessible.*

1110B.2 Miscellaneous General Standards.

1110B.2.1 Circulation. *Circulation aisles and pedestrian ways shall be sized according to functional requirements and in no case shall be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width.*

1110B.2.2 Storage areas. *The doorway providing access to all such areas shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width. Storage areas shall be made accessible in the number and dimensions provided in Section 1125B.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1111B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP R OCCUPANCIES

1111B.1 General. *Group R Occupancies shall be accessible or adaptable as provided in this chapter. Public-use and common use areas serving adaptable guest and/or dwelling units shall be accessible. See also the general accessibility requirements as listed in Sections 1114B.1.1 and 1111B.*

Exception: *When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

1111B.2 Public and Common-use Rooms or Areas. *Public and common-use rooms and similar areas shall be made accessible to people with disabilities, subject to specific provisions contained in other portions of these regulations. See also general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

1111B.3 Recreational Facilities. *When recreational facilities are provided, including swimming pools, they shall comply with Sections 1104B.4.3 and 1132B.2.*

1111B.4 Hotels, Motels, Inns, Dormitories, Resorts, Homeless Shelters, Halfway Houses, Transient Group Homes and Similar Places of Transient Lodging. *Hotels, motels, inns, dormitories, resorts, and similar places of transient lodging shall provide access for persons with disabilities in accordance with the provisions of the accessibility requirements of this California Building Code, except as herein provided.*

1111B.4.1 Available range of accommodations. *Accessible guest rooms or suites shall be dispersed among the various classes of sleeping accommodations to provide a range of options applicable to room sizes, costs, amenities provided, and the number of beds provided.*

1111B.4.2 Guest rooms and suites. *Places of transient lodging shall incorporate the accessibility requirements of this code as modified by this chapter in at least one guest room or dormitory room together with their sanitary facilities ~~in conformance with~~ as required in Table 11B-3. All accessible sleeping rooms or suites required by Table 11B-3 shall comply with the requirements of Section 1111B.4.5 for hearing impaired guests.*

> ***Exception:*** *When guest rooms are being altered in an existing facility, or portion thereof, subject to the requirements of this section, at least one guest room or suite that complies with the accessibility requirements of this code as modified by this chapter shall be provided for each 25 guest rooms, or fraction thereof, of rooms being altered until the number of such rooms provided equals the number required to be accessible in Table 11B-3. In addition, at least one guest room or suite that complies with the requirements of Section 1111B.4.5 shall be provided for each 25 guest rooms, or fraction thereof, of rooms being altered until the number of such rooms equals the number required to be accessible in Table 11B-4.*

1111B.4.3 Access to beds. *Accessible sleeping rooms shall have a 36-inch (914 mm) clear width maneuvering space located along both sides of a bed, except that where two beds are provided, this requirement can be met by providing a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) maneuvering space located between the beds.*

In addition, there shall be a clear space under the bed for the use of a personal lift device. The clear space shall be on a long side of the bed adjacent to an accessible aisle. The clear space shall extend horizontally to points not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from each end of the bed, vertically not less than 7 inches (178 mm), and not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep.

1111B.4.4 Kitchen facilities. *When accommodations are provided with kitchen units, accessible kitchens shall be provided to those accommodations required to be accessible ~~in conformance with~~ as required in Table 11B-3, and shall meet the requirements of Section 1133A.*

1111B.4.5 Visual alarms, notification devices and telephones for persons with hearing impairments. *In addition to those accessible sleeping rooms and suites required by Section 1111B.4.2 ~~to comply with this section~~, additional sleeping rooms and suites shall be provided with the following features ~~in conformance with~~ as required by Table 11B-4 ~~and~~ as follows:*

1111B.4.5.1 Visual alarms. *~~Auxiliary visual~~ Visual alarms shall be provided and shall comply with ~~Section 1114B.2.4~~ NFPA 72 and Chapter 9, Sections 907.9.1 and 907.9.2.*

1111B.4.5.2 Visual notification devices. *Visual notification devices shall also be provided in units, sleeping rooms and suites to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to ~~auxiliary~~ visual alarm signal appliances.*

1111B.4.5.3 Telephones. *Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls complying with Section 1117B.2.8; an accessible electrical outlet within 48 inches (1219 mm) of a telephone connection shall be provided to facilitate the use of a text telephone.*

1111B.4.6 Bathrooms in hotels, motels, inns, dormitories, resorts, homeless shelters, halfway houses, transient group homes and similar places of transient lodging. *Required accessible bathrooms for places of transient lodging shall comply with the following provisions:*

> ***Exception:*** *Hotel and motel bathrooms beyond those specified in Section 1111B.4 need not comply with the provisions of this section or other accessibility provision of the California Building, Electrical, and Plumbing Codes if they provide the following features:*
>
> > ***1.*** *All bathroom fixtures are in a location that allows a person using a wheelchair measuring 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) to touch the wheelchair to any lavatory, urinal, water closet, tub, sauna, shower stall and any other similar sanitary installation, if provided.*
> >
> > ***2.*** *All bathroom entrance doors have a clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) and shall be either sliding doors or shall be hung to swing in the direction of egress from the bathroom.*

1. Doors. *Doors to accessible bathrooms shall comply with Section 1133B.2. Doors shall not swing into the floor space required for any fixture.*

2. Clear floor space. *All fixtures and controls shall be on an accessible route. There must be within the bathroom a clear floor space measuring 30 inches by 60 inches (762 mm by 1524 mm). The clear floor spaces at fixtures and controls, the accessible route, and the turning space may overlap.*

3. Water closets. *If a toilet stall is provided, it shall comply with Section 1115B.7.1 or 1115B.7.2, its water closet shall comply with Section 1115B of this code.*

4. Lavatory and mirrors. *If a lavatory and/or mirror is provided, it shall comply with Section 1115B.9 of this code.*

5. Controls and dispensers. *If controls, dispensers, receptacles, or other types of equipment are provided, then at least one of each shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with Section 1117B.6, "Controls and Operating Mechanisms."*

6. Bathing and shower facilities. *If tubs or showers are provided, then at least one accessible tub that complies with Section 1115B.6.1 or at least one accessible shower that complies with Section 1115B.6.2 of this code shall be provided.*

7. Toilet facilities. *Toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1111B.4.6, as modified for hotel, motel and dormitory accommodations.*

1111B.4.7 Dormitory rooms. *Dormitory rooms beyond those specified herein shall comply with the adaptability requirements of Section 1111B.5.*

1111B.5 Buildings and Complexes Containing Publicly Funded Dwelling Units.

1111B.5.1 General. *Buildings and complexes containing publicly funded dwelling units shall be accessible as required by Chapter 11A, Housing Accessibility, except that scoping requirements for covered multifamily dwellings include one or more publicly funded dwelling units, and is required to comply with Division IV. Accessibility for Existing Buildings, beginning with Section 1134B.*

TABLE 11B-3
ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBILITY REQUIRED IN GUEST ROOMS OR SUITES*

TOTAL NUMBER OF ROOMS	FULLY ACCESSIBLE ROOMS	PLUS ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE ROOMS WITH ROLL-IN SHOWERS
1 to 25	0	1
26 to 50	1	1
51 to 75	3	1
76 to 100	4	1
101 to 150	5	2
151 to 200	6	2
201 to 300	7	3
301 to 400	8	4
401 to 500	9	4
501 to 1,000	2% of total	4 plus 1 for each additional 100 over 400
1,001 and over	20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000	

*~~*Note:~~ Provisions of this chapter are additional modifications to general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

TABLE 11B-4.
ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBILITY REQUIRED FOR HEARING IMPAIRED IN GUEST ROOMS*

TOTAL NUMBER OF ROOMS	***NUMBER OF ROOMS EQUIPPED FOR HEARING IMPAIRED***
1 to 25	*1*
26 to 50	*2*
51 to 75	*3*
76 to 104	*4*
101 to 150	*5*
151 to 200	*6*
201 to 300	*7*
301 to 400	*8*
401 to 500	*9*
501 to 1,000	*2% of total*
1,001 and over	*20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000*

**~~Note:~~ Provisions of this chapter are additional modifications to general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1. In addition to these requirements, for Group I-1 and R-1 occupancies see Section 907.9.1.3.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1112B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP S OCCUPANCIES

(Reserved for future use.)

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1113B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP U OCCUPANCIES

(Reserved for future use.)

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1114B
FACILITY ACCESSIBILITY

When buildings are required to be accessible, buildings and facilities shall be accessible as provided in this section and in those sections listed in Section 1114B.1.1.

1114B.1 Design and Construction.

1114B.1.1 General. *When accessibility is required by this chapter, it shall be designed and constructed to meet the minimum requirements of the following sections:*

Chapter 11B. Accessibility*; Division I, New Buildings; Division II, Site Accessibility; Division III, Accessibility for Entrances, Exits and Paths of Travel; and Division IV, Accessibility for Existing Buildings*

Entrances *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.1; [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.1.1*

Doors *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1114A.4.4, 1117A.2, 1122A.3.4, 1126A, 1132A; [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.2*

Corridors *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A; [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.3*

Stairways *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1115A.6, 1123A; [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.4*

Ramps *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1112A, 1114A, 1122A; [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.5*

Aisles *– [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.6*

Walks and Sidewalks *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1113A; [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.7*

Hazards *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1116A, 1125A; [for DSA-AC] Section 1133B.8*

Elevators *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 3003; [for DSA-AC] Section 1116B*

Special Access (Wheelchair) Lifts *– [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1124A; [for DSA-AC] Section 1116B.2*

Alarms *– Chapter 35.*

See also Part 3, California Electrical Code.

1114B.1.2 Accessible route of travel. *When a building, or portion of a building, is required to be accessible or adaptable, an accessible route of travel shall be provided to all portions of the building, to accessible building entrances and between the building and the public way. Except within an individual dwelling unit, an accessible route of travel shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or other spaces used for similar purposes. At least one accessible route within the boundary of the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking and accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks, to the accessible building entrance they serve. The accessible route shall, to the maximum extent feasible, coincide with the route for the general public. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, facilities, elements and spaces that are on the same site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements and with all accessible dwelling units within the building or facility. An accessible route shall connect at least one accessible entrance of each accessible dwelling unit with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the accessible dwelling unit.*

Where more than one route of travel is provided, all routes shall be accessible.

Exception: *Where an elevator is provided for vertical access, only one elevator is required. Where more than one elevator is provided, all elevators shall be accessible.*

See Section 1114B.1.1 for a list of code sections applicable to accessible route of travel.

1114B.1.3 Primary entry access. *All entrances and all exterior ground-level exits shall be accessible in compliance with Section 1133B.1.1.*

1114B.1.4 Signs. *See Section 1117B.5.*

1114B.1.5 Adaptable dwelling units. *See Section 1111B.*

1114B.2 Egress and Areas ~~for Evacuation Assistance~~ <u>of Refuge</u>.

1114B.2.1 ~~[For SFM]~~ General. *In buildings <u>or facilities</u> or portions of buildings <u>or facilities</u> required to be accessible, accessible means of egress shall be provided ~~in the same number~~ as required ~~for exits~~ by Chapter 10<u>, Section 1007</u>. ~~When an exit required by Chapter 10 is not accessible, an area for evacuation assistance shall be provided.~~*

~~*Areas for evacuation assistance shall comply with the requirements of this code and shall adjoin an accessible route of travel complying with this code.*~~

~~*EXCEPTIONS:*~~

~~*1. Areas of evacuation assistance are not required in buildings or facilities having a supervised automatic sprinkler system.*~~

~~*2. In alterations of existing buildings, areas of evacuation assistance are not required.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2 [For SFM] Areas for evacuation assistance.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2.1 [For SFM] Location and construction. An area for evacuation assistance shall be one of the following:*~~

~~*1. [For SFM] A portion of a stairway landing within a smoke-proof enclosure, complying with Section 1005.3.3.*~~

~~*2. [For SFM] A portion of an exterior exit balcony located immediately adjacent to an exit stairway when the exterior exit balcony complies with Section 1006.3. Openings to the exterior of the building located within 20*~~

~~*feet (6096 mm) of the area for evacuation assistance shall be protected with fire assemblies having a three-fourths-hour fire-protection rating.*~~

~~*3. [For SFM] A portion of a one-hour fire-resistive corridor complying with Section 1004.3.4 located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure.*~~

~~*4. [For SFM] A vestibule located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure and constructed to the same fire-resistive standards as required by Section 1004.3.4.*~~

~~*5. [For SFM] A portion of a stairway landing within an exit enclosure which is vented to the exterior and is separated from the interior of the building by not less than one-hour fire-resistive door assemblies.*~~

~~*6. [For SFM] When approved by the building official, an area or room, which is separated from other portions of the building by a smoke barrier. Smoke barriers shall have a fire-resistive rating of not less than one-hour and shall completely enclose the area or room. Doors in the smoke barrier shall be tight-fitting smoke- and draft-control assemblies having a fire-protection rating of not less than 20 minutes and shall be self-closing or automatic-closing. The area or room shall be provided with an exit directly to an exit enclosure. When the room or area exits into an exit enclosure which is required to be of more than one-hour fire-resistive construction, the room or area shall have the same fire-resistive construction, including the same opening protection, as required for the adjacent exit enclosure.*~~

~~*7. [For SFM] An elevator lobby complying with Section 1114B.2.3.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2.2 [For SFM] Size. Each area for evacuation assistance shall provide at least two accessible areas that are not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm). The area for evacuation assistance shall not encroach on any required exit width. The total number of such 30-inch by 48-inch (762 mm by 1219 mm) areas per story shall not be less than one for every 200 persons of calculated occupant load served by the area for evacuation assistance.*~~

~~*EXCEPTION: The building official may reduce the minimum number of 30-inch by 48-inch (762 mm by 1219 mm) areas to one for each area for evacuation assistance on floors where the occupant load is less than 200.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2.3 [For SFM] Adjacent stairway width. Each stairway adjacent to an area for evacuation assistance shall have a minimum clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2.4 [For SFM] Two-way communication.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2.4.1 [For SFM] A telephone with controlled access to a public telephone system or another method of two-way communication shall be provided between each area of refuge and the primary entry. The fire department may approve a location other than the primary entry.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2.4.2 [For DSA-AC] A method of two-way communication with both visible and audible communication shall be provided between each area of evacuation assistance and the primary entry. A button in the area of rescue assistance shall activate both a light in the area of rescue assistance indicating that rescue has been requested and a light at the primary entry indicating that rescue is being requested. A button at the primary entry shall activate both a light at the primary entry and a light in the area of rescue assistance indicating that the request has been received.*~~

~~*A telephone with controlled access to a public telephone system or another method of two-way communication shall be provided between each area of refuge and the primary entry. The fire department may approve a location other than the primary entry.*~~

~~*1114B.2.2.5 [For SFM] Identification. Each area for evacuation assistance shall be identified by a sign which states AREA FOR EVACUATION ASSISTANCE and the international symbol of accessibility. The sign shall be illuminated when exit sign illumination is required. In each area for evacuation assistance, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted adjoining the two-way communication system.*~~

~~*1114B.2.3 [For SFM] Area for evacuation assistance, high rise alternative. Within a building of any height or occupancy constructed in accordance with the requirements of Sections 403.1 through 403.10, an area for evacuation assistance may be located in the elevator lobby when:*~~

~~*1. The area for evacuation assistance complies with the requirements for size, two-way communication and identification as specified in Section 1114B.2.2; and*~~

~~*2. Elevator shafts and adjacent lobbies are pressurized as required for smoke-proof enclosures in Section 1005.3.3. Such pressurization system shall be activated by smoke detectors on each floor located in a manner approved by the building official. Pressurization equipment and its ductwork within the building shall be separated from other portions of the building by a minimum two-hour fire-resistive construction.*~~

~~*1114B.2.4 [For SFM]*~~
***1114B.2.2* Alarms/emergency warning systems/accessibility.** *If emergency warning systems are ~~required, they shall activate a means of warning the hearing impaired. Emergency warning systems as part of the fire-alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 as amended in Chapter 35.~~ provided, they shall include both audible alarms and visual alarms complying with NFPA 72 and Chapter 9, Section 907.9.1 and 907.9.2.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1115B
BATHING AND TOILET FACILITIES (SANITARY FACILITIES)

1115B.1 General. *Sanitary facilities that serve buildings, facilities or portions of buildings or facilities that are required by these standards to be accessible to persons with disabilities, shall conform to the following requirements, except as specifically exempted in other portions of this code.*

~~*NOTE:*~~ *See Section 1111B.4.6 and Chapter 11A for bathrooms in residential occupancies.*

Exception: *In existing buildings or facilities, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any building standard under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such standard ~~shall~~ may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided. When equivalent facilitation is used, the following criteria shall apply:*

1. *All sanitary facilities are not required to comply with these building standards when the enforcing agency determines that sanitary facilities are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities within a reasonable distance of accessible areas.*

2. *Equivalent facilitation would require doors to have a clear, unobstructed opening of at least 30 inches (762 mm).*

1115B.2 ~~Toilet Facilities.~~ Separate and unisex facilities. *Where separate facilities are provided for ~~nondisabled~~ persons of each sex, ~~separate~~ these facilities shall be ~~provided for~~ accessible to persons with disabilities ~~of each sex also~~. Where unisex facilities are provided, these facilities shall be accessible to persons with disabilities. ~~for persons without disabilities, at least one unisex facility shall be provided for persons with disabilities within close proximity to the nonaccessible facility. (See Figure 11B-1A.)~~*

1115B.2.1 Accessible water closets.

1. *The height of accessible water closets shall be a minimum of 17 inches (432 mm) and a maximum of 19 inches (483 mm) measured to the top of a maximum 2-inch high (51 mm) toilet seat.*

Exception: *A 3-inch (76 mm) high seat shall be permitted only in alterations where the existing fixture is less than 15 inches (381 mm) high.*

2. *Controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting. Controls for the flush valves shall be mounted on the wide side of toilet areas, no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5-pound-force (lbf) (22.2 N).*

~~*NOTES: 1.*~~
3. *See the California Building Code, Chapter 11A, Section 1134A.7 for additional requirements for water closets in publicly funded housing and all nonresidential occupancies.*

~~*2.*~~
4. *Automatic "spring to lifted position" seats are not allowed.*

1115B.2.1.1 Accessible urinals.

1115B.2.1.1.1 *Urinals shall be floor mounted or wall hung. Where one or more wall hung urinals are provided, at least one with a rim projecting a minimum of 14 inches (356 mm) from the wall and a maximum of 17 inches (432 mm) from the wall and a maximum of 17 inches (432 mm) above the floor shall be provided.*

1115B.2.1.1.2 *Flush controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist and shall be mounted no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Electronic automatic flushing controls are acceptable and preferable.*

1115B.2.1.2 Accessible lavatories.

1115B.2.1.2.1 *Faucet controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand in accordance with Chapter 11B of the California Building Code and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Lever-operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms (preferable) are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.*

Lavatories, when located adjacent to a side wall or partition, shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) to the centerline of the fixture. All lavatories that are designated to be accessible shall be mounted with the rim or counter edge no higher than 34 inches (864 mm) above the finished floor and with vertical clearance measured from the bottom of the apron or the outside bottom edge of the lavatory of 29 inches (737 mm) reducing to 27 inches (686 mm) at a point located 8 inches (203 mm) back from the front edge.

Knee clearance below the lavatory shall extend a minimum of 30 inches (762 mm) in width by 17 inches (432 mm) in depth. See Figure 11B-1D--Knee Clearance.

1115B.2.1.2.2 *Hot water and drainpipes accessible under lavatories shall be insulated or otherwise covered. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories.*

1115B.2.1.3 Accessible showers.

1115B.2.1.3.1 *Water controls of a single-lever design shall be located on a sidewall adjacent to the seat and operable with a maximum force of 5-lbf (22.2 N). The controls shall be located 40 inches (1016 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the shower floor.*

1115B.2.1.3.2 *A flexible handheld shower unit with a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long shall be provided with head mounting height of 48 inches (1219 mm) [plus or minus 1-inch (25 mm) tolerance] maximum above the shower floor.*

1115B.2.1.3.3 *Where shower facilities for persons with disabilities are provided in areas subject to excessive vandalism, in lieu of providing the fixed flexible hose and handheld showerhead required above two wall-mounted showerheads shall be installed. Each showerhead shall be controlled so that it can be operated independently of the other and shall have swivel angle adjustment, both vertically and horizontally. One showerhead shall be located at a height of 40 inches (1016 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the floor.*

1115B.2.1.3.4 *Where, within the same functional area, two or more showers are provided for people with disabilities, there shall be at least one shower constructed opposite hand from the other or others (i.e., one with left-hand controls versus right-hand controls.*

1115B.2.1.4 Accessible bathtubs. *Bathtubs shall be provided with a shower spray unit having a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long that can be used as a shower. Bathtub enclosures, if provided, shall not obstruct controls or transfer from wheelchair onto bathtub seats or into tubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks mounted on their rims.*

1115B.2.1.5 Accessible drinking fountains.

1115B.2.1.5.1 *The drinking fountain shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) in depth and there shall be clear and unobstructed knee space under the drinking fountain not less than 27 inches (686 mm) in height and 8 inches (203 mm) in depth, the depth measurements being taken from the front edge of the fountain. Additionally, there shall be toe clearance of 9 inches (229 mm) in height above the floor and 17 inches (432 mm) in height above the floor and 17 inches (432 mm) in depth from the front edge of the fountain. A side approach drinking fountain is not acceptable.*

1115B.2.1.5.2 *If provided in covered multifamily buildings, drinking fountains and water coolers shall be on an accessible route. Wall-mounted and post-mounted cantilevered drinking fountains and water coolers shall have a clear knee space a minimum of 30 inches (762 mm) in width and shall also have a minimum clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) to allow a person in a wheelchair to approach the unit facing forward.*

1115B.2.1.5.3 *The bubbler shall be activated by a manually operated system not requiring a force greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N) that is located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the front edge of the fountain or an electronically controlled device (preferably). The bubbler outlet orifice shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the front edge of the drinking fountain and within 36 inches (914 mm) of the floor. The water stream from the bubbler shall be substantially parallel to the front edge of the drinking fountain.*

1115B.2.1.5.4 *The spout shall provide a flow of water at least 4 inches (102 mm) high so as to allow the insertion of a cup or glass under the flow of water. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N).*

1115B.2.1.6 Accessible sinks.

1115B.2.1.6.1 Accessible kitchen sinks. *Faucet controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be not greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Lever-operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.*

1115B.2.1.6.2 Noncommercial kitchen and counter bar sinks. *Kitchen and counter bar sinks located in common use areas shall have faucet controls and operating mechanisms operable with one hand in accordance with Chapter 11B of the California Building Code and shall not require grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Lever-operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs.*

1115B.3 Where Used by Children. *Where facilities are to be used solely by small children, the specific heights and clearances may be adjusted to meet their accessibility needs. See Table 1115B-1 for suggested mounting heights and clearances.*

1115B.4 Passageways. *Passageways leading to sanitary facilities shall have a clear access. All doorways leading to such sanitary facilities shall have:*

1115B.4.1 Clear opening. *A clear unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm).*
1115B.4.2 Level area. *A level and clear area for a minimum depth of 60 inches (1524 mm) in the direction of the door swing as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position, and 44 inches (1118 mm) where the door swings away from the level and clear area. The width of the level area on the side to which the door swings shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of the door for exterior doors and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior doors.*

1115B.5 Identification Symbols. *Doorways leading to men's sanitary facilities shall be identified by an equilateral triangle 1/4 inch thick (6.4 mm) with edges 12 inches (305 mm) long and a vertex pointing upward. Women's sanitary facilities shall be identified by a circle, 1/4 inch thick (6.4mm) and 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter. Unisex sanitary facilities shall be identified by a circle 1/4 inch thick (6.4 mm), 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter with a 1/4-inch thick (6.4 mm) triangle superimposed on the circle and within the 12-inch (305 mm) diameter. These geometric symbols shall be centered on the door at a height of 60 inches (1524 mm) and their color and contrast shall be distinctly different from the color and contrast of the door. ~~NOTE:~~ See also Section 1117B.5.1 Item 1 for additional signage requirements applicable to sanitary facilities.*

1115B.6 Bathing Facilities. *Where facilities for bathing are provided for the public, clients or employees, including showers, bathtubs or lockers, at least one such facility, and not less than 1 percent of all facilities, shall conform to the following standards unless specifically exempted by other portions of these regulations.*

1115B.6.1 Bathtubs. *Bathtubs required to be accessible shall comply with this section.*

1. Floor space. *Clear floor space at bathtubs shall be as shown in Figure 11B-8.*

2. Seat. *An in-tub seat or a seat at the head end of the tub shall be provided as shown in Figures 11B-8 and 11B-9B. The structural strength of seats and their attachments shall comply with Section 1115B.8.3. Seats shall be mounted securely and shall not slip during use.*

3. Grab bars. *Grab bars complying with Sections 1115B.8.2, 1115B.8.3 and 1115B.8.4 shall be provided as shown in Figures 11B-9A and 11B-9B.*

4. Controls. *Faucets and other controls shall be located as shown in Figure 11B-9B. They shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).*

5. Shower unit. *A shower spray unit with a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided.*

6. Bathtub enclosures. *If provided, enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls or transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into tubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks mounted on their rims.*

1115B.6.2 Showers. *Showers shall conform to the following requirements.*

1115B.6.2.1 Size. *Showers shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in width between wall surfaces and 30 inches (762 mm) minimum in depth with a full opening width on the long side, or 42 inches (1067 mm) in width between wall surfaces and 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum in depth with an entrance opening of 42 inches (1067 mm). As an alternative, showers 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in width may be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum in depth as long as the entrance opening width is a minimum 36 inches (914 mm).*

1115B.6.2.2 Thresholds. *When a threshold or recessed drop is permitted, it shall be a maximum of 1/2 inch (13 mm) in height and shall be beveled or sloped at an angle not exceeding 45 degrees (100 percent gradient) from the horizontal.*

1115B.6.2.3 *Where, within the same functional area, two or more accessible showers are provided, there shall be at least one shower constructed opposite hand from the other or others (i.e., one left-hand controls versus right-hand controls).*

1115B.6.2.4 Accessories. *Shower accessories shall include:*

1115B.6.2.4.1 Water controls. *Water controls of a single-lever design shall be located on the side wall of the compartment adjacent to the seat and operable with a maximum force of 5 lb (22.2N) mounted at 40 inches (1016 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the shower floor, and the centerline of the controls shall be within a reach range of no less than 18 inches (457 mm) and no more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the rear edge of the seat.*

1115B.6.2.4.2 Hand-held sprayer unit. *A flexible handheld sprayer unit with a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long shall be provided within reach range of the seat at a distance not to exceed 27 inches (686 mm) horizontally measured from the rear seat edge to the centerline of the mounting bracket. This unit shall be mounted at a maximum height of 48 inches (1219 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the shower floor.*

1115B.6.2.4.3 Sprayer unit alternative. *Except within guest rooms and suites in hotels, motels and similar transient lodging establishments where accessible shower facilities are provided in areas subject to excessive vandalism, in lieu of providing the fixed flexible hose, two wall mounted shower heads shall be installed. Each shower head shall be installed so that it can be operated independently of the other and shall have swivel angle adjustments, both vertically and horizontally. One shower head shall be located at a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the floor.*

1115B.6.2.4.4 Floor slope. *The maximum slope of the floor shall be 2 percent in any direction. Where drains are provided, grate openings shall be a maximum of 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) and located flush with the floor surface.*

1115B.6.2.4.5 Shower fixtures. *Shower accessories shall include:*

1. *A folding seat located within 27 inches (686 mm) of the controls mounted 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor, and with a minimum space of 1 inch (25 mm) and maximum space of 1-½ inches (38 mm) allowed between the edge of the seat and any wall. When folded, the seat shall not extend more than 6 inches (152 mm) from the mounting wall. See Figures 11B-2A, 11B-2B, 11B-2C and 11B-2D.*

2. *Grab bars located on walls adjacent to and opposite the seat. Grab bars also comply with the diameter, loading and projection requirements of Sections 1115B.8.2, 1115B.8.3 and 1115B.8.4. Grab bars shall be mounted between a minimum of 33 inches (838 mm) and a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) above the*

shower floor with an L-shaped grab bar mounted on walls opposite and adjacent to the front edge of the seat, but not extended to include that portion of wall over the seat. See Figure 11B-2A or 11B-2B.

1115B.6.2.4.6 Soap dish. *When a soap dish is provided, it shall be located on the control wall at a maximum height of 40 inches (1016 mm) above the shower floor, and within reach limits from the seat.*

1115B.6.2.5 Enclosures. *Enclosures, when provided for shower ~~stalls~~ compartments, shall not obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats. ~~NOTE:~~ See Figures 11B-2A, 11B-2B, 11B-2C and 11B-2D.*

1115B.6.3 Open showers. *Where no separate shower compartments are provided, the shower for persons with disabilities shall be located in a corner with L-shaped grab bars extending along two adjacent walls with a folding seat adjacent to the shower controls. See Figures 11B-2A, 11B-2B, 11B-2C and 11B-2D.*

1115B.6.4 Lockers. *Where lockers are provided for the public, clients, employees, members or participants, at least one locker and not less than 1 percent of all lockers shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities. A path of travel not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width shall be provided to these lockers.*

1115B.7 Toilet Facilities.

1115B.7.1 Multiple-accommodation toilet facilities. *Multiple-accommodation toilet facilities shall have the following: ~~NOTE: See definition in Chapter 2.~~*

1. Wheelchair clearance. *A clear space measured from the floor to a height of 27 inches (686 mm) above the floor, within the sanitary facility room, of sufficient size to inscribe a circle with a diameter not less than 60 inches (1524 mm), or a clear space 56 inches by 63 inches (1422 mm by 1600 mm) in size. Other than the door to the accessible water closet compartment, a door, in any position, may encroach into this space by not more than 12 inches (305 mm).*

2. Clear space at fixtures. *Doors shall not swing into the floor space required for any fixture.*

3. Accessible water closet compartment. *A water closet fixture located in a compartment shall provide a minimum 28 inch wide (711 mm) clear space from a fixture or a minimum 32 inch-wide (813 mm) clear space from a wall at one side of the water closet. The other side of the water closet shall provide 18 inches (457 mm) from the centerline of the water closet to the wall. The ~~stall~~ compartment shall be a minimum of 60-inches (1524 mm) wide. A minimum 48-inch-long (1219 mm) clear space shall be provided in front of the water closet if the compartment has an end-opening door (facing the water closet). A minimum 60 inch-long (1524 mm) clear space shall be provided in a compartment with the door located at the side. Grab bars shall not project more than 3 inches (76 mm) into the clear spaces as specified above.*

4. Compartment doors. *Water closet compartment shall be equipped with a door that has an automatic-closing device, and shall have a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) when located at the end and 34 inches (864 mm) when located at the side with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position. When standard compartment doors are used, with a minimum 9-inch (229 mm) clearance for footrests underneath and a self-closing device, clearance at the strike edge as specified in Section 1133B.2.4.3 is not required.*

The inside and outside of the compartment door shall be equipped with a loop or U-shaped handle immediately below the latch. The latch shall be flip-over style, sliding, or other hardware not requiring the user to grasp or twist. Except for door-opening widths and door swings, a clear, unobstructed access of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be provided to water closet compartments designed for use by persons with disabilities and the space immediately in front of a water closet compartment shall not be less than 48 inches (1219 mm) as measured at right angles to compartment door in its closed position.

5. Large toilet rooms. *Where six or more ~~stalls~~ compartments are provided within a multiple-accommodation toilet room, at least one ~~stall~~ compartment shall comply with Items 2 and 3, and at least one additional ~~stall~~ compartment shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide with an outward swinging self closing door and parallel grab bars complying with Sections 1115B.8.2, 1115B.8.3 and 1115B.8.4.*

1115B.7.2 Single-accommodation toilet facilities. *There shall be sufficient space in the toilet room for a wheelchair measuring 30 inches (762 mm) wide by 48 inches (1219 mm) long to enter the room and permit the door to close. There shall be in the room a clear floor space of at least 60 inches (1524 mm) in diameter, or a T-shaped space complying with Figure 11B-12 (a) and (b). No door shall encroach into this space for more than 12 inches (305 mm) except for the panel door to any water closet compartment if there is one. (See Figure 11B-1A). The water closet*

shall be located in a space which provides a minimum 28-inch-wide (711 mm) clear space from a fixture or a minimum 32-inch-wide (813 mm) clear space from a wall at one side. The other side shall provide 18 inches (457 mm) from the centerline of the water closet to the wall. A minimum 48 inches (1219 mm) of clear space shall be provided in front of the water closet. All doors, fixtures and controls shall be on an accessible route. The minimum clear width of an accessible route shall be 36 inches (914 mm) except at doors (see Section 1133B.2). If a person in a wheelchair must make a turn around an obstruction, the minimum clear width of the accessible route shall be as shown in Figure 11B-5E. (See also Figure 11B-1A.)

~~NOTE:~~ For bathrooms serving residential occupancies, see Section 1111B.4.6 and Chapter 11A.

> ***Exception:*** *In an existing building, a single-accommodation toilet facility may have the water closet fixture located in an area which provides a clear space of not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide by 48 inches (1219 mm) long in front of the water closet.*

1115B.8 Grab Bars.

1115B.8.1 Location. *Grab bars located on each side, or one side and the back of the accessible toilet ~~stall or~~ compartment, shall be securely attached 33 inches (838 mm) above and parallel to the floor, except that where a tank-type toilet is used which obstructs placement at 33 inches (838 mm), the grab bar may be as high as 36 inches (914 mm). Grab bars shall be at least 42 inches (1067 mm) long with the front end positioned 24 inches (610 mm) in front of the water closet stool. Grab bars at the back shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) long. See Figures 11B-1A, 11B-1B and 11B-1C.*

1115B.8.2 Diameter or width. *The diameter or width of the gripping surfaces of a grab bar shall be 1-¼ inches to 1-½ inches (32 mm to 38 mm) or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. If grab bars are mounted adjacent to a wall, the space between the wall and the grab bars shall be 1-½ inches (38 mm). See Figure 11B-1C.*

1115B.8.3 Structural strength. *The structural strength of grab bars, tub and shower seats, fasteners, and mounting devices shall meet the following specifications:*

> ***1.*** *Bending stress in a grab bar or seat induced by the maximum bending moment from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable stress for the material of the grab bar or seat.*
>
> ***2.*** *Shear stress induced in a grab bar or seat by the application of a 250-pound (1112N) point load shall be less than the allowable shear stress for the material of the grab bar or seat, and its mounting bracket or other support is considered to be fully restrained, then direct and torsional shear stresses shall not exceed the allowable shear stress.*
>
> ***3.*** *Shear force induced in fastener or mounting device from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable lateral load of either the fastener or mounting device or the supporting structure, whichever is the smaller allowable load.*
>
> ***4.*** *Tensile force induced in a fastener by a direct tension force of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load, plus the maximum moment from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load, shall be less than the allowable withdrawal load between the fastener and supporting structure.*
>
> ***5.*** *Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.*

1115B.8.4 Surface. *A grab bar and any wall or other surface adjacent to it shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).*

1115B.9 Toilet Room Fixtures and Accessories.

1115B.9.1 Lavatory fixtures. *The requirements of this subsection shall apply to lavatory fixtures, vanities and built-in lavatories.*

1. *A clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) complying with Section 1118B.4 shall be provided in front of a lavatory to allow a forward approach. Such clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route and shall extend into knee and toe space underneath the lavatory.*

2. *Mirrors shall be mounted with the bottom edge no higher than 40 inches (1016 mm) from the floor.*

1115B.9.2 Towel, sanitary napkins, waste receptacles. *Where towel, sanitary napkins, waste receptacles, and other similar dispensing and disposal fixtures are provided, at least one of each type shall be located with all operable parts, including coin slots, within 40 inches (1016 mm) from the finished floor.*

1115B.9.3 Toilet tissue dispensers. *Toilet tissue dispensers shall be located on the wall within 12 inches (305 mm) of the front edge of the toilet seat. Dispensers that control delivery or that do not permit continuous paper flow shall not be used. See Figure 11B-1A.*

1115B.9.4 Urinals. *Where urinals are provided, at least one shall have a clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) in front of the urinal to allow forward approach. This clear space shall comply with Section 1118B.4.*

1115B.9.5 Interior surfaces. *In other than dwelling units, toilet room floors shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface such as Portland cement, concrete, ceramic tile or other approved material which extends upward onto the walls at least 5 inches (127 mm). Walls within water closet compartments and walls within 24 inches (610 mm) of the front and sides of urinals shall be similarly finished to a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) and, except for structural elements, the materials used in such walls shall be a type which is not adversely affected by moisture.*

1115B.9.6 Shower areas. *Showers in all occupancies shall be finished as specified in Section 1115B.9.5 to a height of not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the drain inlet. Materials other than structural elements used in such walls shall be of a type which is not adversely affected by moisture.*

1115B.9.7 Doors and panels. *Doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be substantially constructed from approved, shatter-resistant materials. Hinged shower doors shall open outward.*

1115B.9.8 Glazing for shower and bathtub enclosures. *Glazing used in doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be fully tempered, laminated safety glass or approved plastic. When glass is used, it shall have minimum thickness of not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) when fully tempered, or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) when laminated, and shall pass the test requirements of ~~UBC Standard 24-2~~ Section 2406.*

1115B.9.9 Plastics. *Plastics used in doors and panels of showers and bathtub enclosures shall be of a shatter-resistant type.*

TABLE 1115B-1 – SUGGESTED DIMENSIONS FOR CHILDREN'S USE

The Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance recommends the following dimensions as adequately serving the needs of children in projects under our jurisdiction. These recommendations are based on the federal "Recommendations for Accessibility for Children in Elementary School" and other recognized publications on access for children:
A = Adult Dimensions (age 12 and over)
E = Elementary Dimensions
K = Kindergarten and Pre-school Dimensions

		SUGGESTED	
DIMENSION	***A (Inches)***	***E (Inches)***	K ***(Inches)***
Toilet centering from wall	*18*	*15*	*12*
Toilet seat height/Dimensions to top of seat	*17-19*	*15*	*10-12*
Grab bar height (side)	*33*	*27*	*20-22*
Toilet paper in front of toilet	*12 max.*	*6 max.*	*6 max.*
Napkin disposal in front of toilet	*12 max.*	*12 max.*	*N/A*
Dispenser or mirror height	*40 max*	*36 max*	*32 max*
Lavatory/sink top height	*34 max*	*29 max*	*24 max*
Lavatory/sink knee clearance	*27 min.*	*24 min.*	*19 min.*
Urinal lip height	*17 max*	*15 max*	*13 min*
Urinal flush handle height	*44 max.*	*37 max*	*32 max*
Drinking fountain bubbler height	*36 max*	*32 max*	*30 max*
Drinking fountain knee clearance	*27 min*	*24 min.*	*22 min*
Ramp/stair handrail height	*34-38*	*27*	*22*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1116B
ELEVATORS AND SPECIAL ACCESS (WHEELCHAIR) LIFTS

1116B.1 Elevators. *Elevators shall be accessible. Elevators required to be accessible shall be designed and constructed to comply with this section.*

1116B.1.1 General. *Size of cab and control locations and requirements for accommodation of people with disabilities.*

In buildings two or more stories in height, served by an elevator, or a building served by an elevator required by Chapter 11B, or a building served by an elevator required for accessibility by ~~Section 101.17~~ Section 109.1, all elevators provided shall accommodate a wheelchair.

Exceptions:

1. *When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such regulation shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided, and where it can be demonstrated that a person using a wheelchair can enter and operate the elevator.*

2. *These provisions shall not apply to existing buildings when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17~~ Section 109.1.*

1116B.1.2 Operation and leveling. *The elevator shall be automatic and provided with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring the car to the floor landings within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) under normal loading and unloading conditions. This self-leveling shall, within its zone, be entirely automatic and independent of the operating device and shall correct the overtravel or undertravel. The car shall also be maintained approximately level with the landing, irrespective of load.*

The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of the hoistway landing shall be no greater than 1-¼ inches (32 mm).

1116B.1.3 Door operation. *Power-operated horizontally sliding car and hoistway doors opened and closed by automatic means shall be provided.*

1116B.1.4 Door size. *Minimum clear width for elevator doors shall be 36 inches (914 mm).*

1116B.1.5 Door protective and reopening device. *Doors closed by automatic means shall be provided with a door-reopening device that will function to stop and reopen a car door and adjacent hoistway door in case the car door is obstructed while closing.*

This reopening device shall also be capable of sensing an object or person in the path of a closing door without requiring contact for activation at a nominal 5 inches and 29 inches (127 mm and 737 mm) above the floor.

Door-reopening devices shall remain effective for a period of not less than 20 seconds.

After such an interval, the doors may close in accordance with the requirements of ~~ANSI 17.1-86, the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) document~~ ASME A17.1~~-1990~~.

1116B.1.6 Hall call. *The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call (lantern and audible signal) until the doors of the car start to close shall be calculated by the following equation:*

T = D / (1.5 ft/s) or T = D / (~~445~~ 455 mm/s)

Where T is the total time in seconds and D is the distance from a point in the lobby or landing area 60 inches (1524 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door (see Figure 11B-40D). For cars with in car lanterns, T begins when the lantern is visible from the vicinity of hall call buttons and an audible signal is sounded.

1116B.1.7 Car call. *The minimum acceptable time for doors to remain fully open shall not be less than five seconds.*

1116B.1.8 Car inside. *The car inside shall allow for the turning of a wheelchair. The minimum clear distance between walls or between wall and door, excluding return panels, shall not be less than 80 inches by 54 inches (2032*

mm by 1372 mm) for center opening doors, and 68 inches by 54 inches (1727mmby 1372 mm) for side-slide openings doors. See Figure 11B-40A.Minimum distance from wall to return panel shall not be less than 51 inches (1295 mm).

The centerline of elevator floor buttons shall be no higher than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the finish floor for side approach and 48 inches (1219 mm) for front approach. Except for photoelectric tube bypass switches, emergency controls, including the emergency stop and alarm, shall be grouped in or adjacent to the bottom of the panel and shall be no lower than 2 feet 11 inches (889 mm) from the floor.

For multiple controls only, one set must comply with these height requirements. Floor buttons shall be provided with visual indicators to show when each call is registered. The visual indicators shall be extinguished when each call is answered. The emergency telephone handset shall be positioned no higher than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the floor, and the handset cord shall be a minimum of 2 feet 5 inches (737 mm) in length. If the telephone system is located in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall be lever type conforming to the provisions of Section ~~1003.3.1.8~~ 1008.1.8, type of lock or latch. Emergency intercommunication shall not require voice communication.

~~NOTE:~~Where possible, a 48-inch (1219 mm) maximum height for elevator floor buttons is preferred.

1116B.1.9 Car controls. *Identification for the visually impaired shall be as follows:*

> *Passenger elevator car controls shall have a minimum dimension of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) and shall be raised 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface.*
>
> *Control buttons shall be illuminated, shall have square shoulders and shall be activated by a mechanical motion that is detectable.*
>
> *All control buttons shall be designated by 5/8-inch-minimum (15.9 mm) raised characters ~~that conform to Section 1117B.5.5, or~~ and standard raised symbols that conform to Sections 1117B.5.2, 1117B.5.3, 1117B.5.5 and 1117B.5.7 immediately to the left of the control button. Grade 2 Braille that conforms to Section 1117B.5.6 shall be located immediately below the character or symbol. A minimum clear space of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) or other suitable means of separation shall be provided between rows of control buttons. ~~NOTE:~~ See Figure 11B-40B.*
>
> *The raised characters and symbols shall be white on a black background.*
>
> *Controls and emergency equipment identified by raised symbols shall include, but not be limited to, door open, door close, alarm bell, emergency stop and telephone. The call button for the main entry floor shall be designated by a raised star at the left of the floor designation.*

1116B.1.10 Hall Call Buttons. *The centerline of the hall call buttons shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) above the floor. Buttons shall be a minimum of 3/4-inch (19.1mm) in size and shall be raised 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) [plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm)] above the surrounding surface. Visual indication shall be provided to show each call registered and extinguished when answered. Objects adjacent to, and below, hall call buttons shall not project more than 4 inches (102 mm) from the wall. Hall call buttons shall be internally illuminated with a white light over the entire surface of the button.*

1116B.1.11 Handrails. *A handrail shall be provided on one wall of the car, preferably the rear. The rails shall be smooth, and the inside surface at least 1- ½ inches (38 mm) clear of the walls at a nominal height of 32 inches (813 mm) from the floor. Nominal equals ± 1 inch (25 mm). ~~NOTE:~~ Thirty-two inches (813 mm) required to reduce interference with car controls where lowest button is centered at 35 inches (889mm) above floor.*

1116B.1.12 Minimum illumination. *The minimum illumination at the car controls threshold and the landing when the car and landing doors are open shall not be less than 5 foot-candles (54 lx).*

1116B.1.13 Hall lantern. *A visual and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance indicating to the prospective passenger the car answering the call and its direction of travel as follows:*

> *The visual signal for each direction shall be a minimum of 2-½ inches (64 mm) high by 2-½ inches (64 mm) wide and visible from the proximity of the hall call button.*
>
> *The audible signal shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction or of a configuration that distinguishes between up and down elevator travel.*

The centerline of the fixture shall be located a minimum of 6 feet (1829 mm) in height from the lobby floor.

The use of in-car lanterns, located in or on the car doorjambs, visible from the proximity of the hall call buttons and conforming to the above requirements, shall or will be acceptable.

The use of arrow shapes ~~are~~ is preferred for visible signals.

1116B.1.14 Doorjamb marking. *Passenger elevator landing jambs on all elevator floors shall have the number of the floor on which the jamb is located designated by raised characters that are a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) in height and conform to Section 1117B.5.5 and Grade 2 Braille that conforms to Section 1117B.5.6 located 60 inches on center (1524 mm) above the floor on the jamb panels on both sides of the door so that they are visible from within the elevator. On the grade level, a raised five pointed star shall be placed to the left of the raised character. The outside diameter of the star shall be 2 inches. Braille shall be placed below the corresponding raised characters.*

The raised characters shall otherwise comply with Sections 1117B.5.3, 1117B.5.4 and 1117B.5.2. See Figure ~~11B-40B~~ 11B-40C.

1116B.1.15 Location. *Passenger elevators shall be located near a major path of travel, and provisions shall be made to ensure that they remain accessible and usable at all times the building is occupied.*

1116B.2 Special Access (Wheelchair) Lifts. *Special access wheelchair lifts may be provided between levels in lieu of passenger elevators when the vertical distance between landings, as well as the structural design and safeguards are as allowed by the State of California, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, the Department of Industrial Relations, Division of Occupational Safety and Health and any applicable safety regulations of other administrative authorities having jurisdiction.*

If lifts are provided, they shall be designed and constructed to facilitate unassisted entry, operation and exit from the lift and shall comply with the restrictions and enhancements of this section in conjunction with Sections 3093 to 3094, Part 7, of Title 24, of the California Code of Regulations.

Additionally, lifts may be provided as part of an accessible route only for the following conditions:

1116B.2.1 *To provide an accessible route to a performing area in an assembly occupancy, or to a speaking area or similar place (such as a dais for "head table") in an assembly or Group B Occupancy.*

1116B.2.2 *To comply with the wheelchair viewing position line of-sight and dispersion requirements of Section 1104B.3.5.*

1116B.2.3 *To provide access to incidental occupiable spaces and rooms which are not open to the general public and which house no more than five persons, including, but not limited to, equipment control rooms and projection booths.*

1116B.2.4 *To provide access where existing site constraints or other constraints make use of a ramp or an elevator infeasible.*

Exceptions:

1. *The provisions of this section shall not apply to existing buildings when physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. ~~NOTE:~~ See ~~Section 101.17~~ Section 109.1.*

2. *When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such regulation shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

3. *The installation of lifts as part of an accessible route for additions or alterations is not limited to the four conditions required by Section 1116B.*

1116B.2.4.1 Landing size. *In new construction, the minimum size of landings specified in this section shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm). Other dimensions may be substituted where it can be demonstrated that a person using a wheelchair measuring 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) can enter and operate the lift safely.*

1116B.2.4.2 Relationship to the path of travel. *Level and clear floor areas or landings as specified in this section shall be part of "path of travel" requirements. ~~See Section 217~~.*

1116B.3 When provided as a means of egress. *Special access (wheelchair) lifts, when provided as a component in an accessible means of egress, shall conform to the requirements of Section 1116B.3.*

1116B.3.1 Standby Power*. To ensure continued operation in case of primary power loss, special access (wheelchair) lifts shall be provided with standby power or with self-rechargeable battery power that provides sufficient power to operate all platform lift functions for a minimum of 5 (five) upward and downward trips.*

1116.B.3.2 *Special access (wheelchair) lifts, when provided per Section 1116B.2.2, are permitted to be a component of an accessible means of egress when the area served by the special access lift does not serve more than 4 wheelchair viewing positions and where any one of the following conditions exist:*

1. *The building has a supervised automatic sprinkler system.*

2. *The maximum distance from the point where the wheelchair occupant is seated to a point where the occupant has a choice of two directions of travel to an exit shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm). The length of the path of travel shall include the vertical travel distance of the lift.*

1116B.4 Doors and Gates. *Lifts shall have low energy power-operated doors or gates. Doors and gates shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum, End doors shall be 32 inches (813 mm) minimum clear width. Side doors shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum clear width.*

Exception: *Lifts having doors or gates on opposite sides shall be permitted to have manual doors or gates.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1117B
OTHER BUILDING COMPONENTS

1117B.1 Water Fountains (Drinking).

1117B.1.1 General. *Where water fountains are provided, they shall comply with this section.*

In new construction, where only one drinking fountain area is provided on a floor, there shall be a drinking fountain that is accessible to individuals who use wheelchairs in accordance with Section 1115B.2.1.5 and one accessible to those who have difficulty bending or stooping. This can be accommodated by the use of "hi-low" fountains, or by such other means as would achieve the required accessibility for each group on each floor.

1117B.1.2 Alcoves. *Water fountains shall be located completely within alcoves or otherwise positioned so as not to encroach into pedestrian ways. The alcove in which the water fountain is located shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in width and 18 inches (457 mm) in depth. See Figure 11B-3 of this code. Protruding objects located in alcoves or otherwise positioned so as to limit encroachment into pedestrian ways are permitted to project 4 inches into walks, halls, corridors, passageways or aisles.*

Exception: *When the enforcing agency determines that it would create an unreasonable hardship to locate the water fountain in an alcove, the water fountain may project into the path of travel, and the path of travel shall be identifiable to the blind as follows:*

1. *The surface of the path of travel at the water fountain shall be textured so that it is clearly identifiable by a blind person using a cane. The minimum textured area shall extend from the wall supporting the water fountain to 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the front edge of the water fountain and shall extend 1 foot (305mm) beyond each side of the water fountain, or*

2. *Wing walls shall be provided on each side of the water fountain. The wing walls shall project out from the supporting wall at least as far as the water fountain to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the surface of the path of travel. There shall also be a minimum of 32 inches (813 mm) clear between the wing walls.*

1117B.2 Telephones.

1117B.2.1 General. *If public telephones are provided, they shall comply with this section to the extent required by the following table. See Figure 11B-4.*

Number of each type of telephone provided on each floor	*Minimum number of telephones required to comply with Section 1117B.2*[1]
1 or more single units	*1 or at least 50 percent of telephone unit(s) per floor*
1 telephone bank	*1 or at least 50 percent of telephone unit(s) per bank*
2 or more banks	*1 or at least 50 percent of telephone unit(s) per bank at least 1 telephone per floor shall meet the requirements for a forward reach telephone*

[1]*Additional public telephones may be installed at any height.*

1117B.2.2 Clear floor ground space. *A clear floor or ground space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at telephones.*

1117B.2.3 Size and approach. *The minimum clear floor ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant is 30 inches by 48 inches (762mmby 1219 mm). The minimum clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be positioned for forward or parallel approach to an object. Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be part of the knee space required under some objects. See Figure 11B-5A.*

1117B.2.4 Relationship of maneuvering clearances to wheelchair spaces. *One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space. If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided. See Figure 11B-5A.*

1117B.2.5 Floor surfaces of wheelchair spaces. *Floor surfaces of wheelchair spaces shall conform to Section 1124B. Bases, enclosures and fixed seats shall not impede approaches to telephones by people who use wheelchairs.*

1117B.2.6 Mounting height. *The highest operable part of the telephone shall be within the reach ranges specified in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6. Telephones mounted diagonally in a corner that require wheelchair users to reach diagonally shall have the highest operable part no higher than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.*
See Figure11B-4.

1117B.2.7 Enclosures. *If telephone enclosures are provided, they may overhang the clear floor space required in Sections 1117B.2.2, 1117B.2.3 and 1117B.2.4 within the following limits:*

1. Side reach possible. *The overhang shall be no greater than 19 inches (483 mm). The height of the lowest overhanging part shall be equal to or greater than 27 inches (686 mm). See Figure 11B-4 (a).*

2. Full-height enclosures. *Entrances to full-height enclosures shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum. See Figure 11B-4 (b).*

3. Forward reach required. *If the overhang is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), then the clear width of the enclosure shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum; if the clear width of the enclosure is less than 30 inches (762 mm), then the height of the lowest overhanging part shall be equal to or greater than 27 inches (686 mm). See Figure 11B-4 (c).*

4. Protruding telephone enclosures. *Where telephone enclosures protrude into ~~walls~~ walks, halls, corridors or aisles, they shall also comply with Section 1133B.8.6.*

1117B.2.8 Telephone equipment for hearing impaired persons. *Telephones shall be equipped with a receiver that generates a magnetic field in the area of the receiver cap. If banks of public telephones are provided, at least one in each bank and a total of at least 25 percent of the total number of public telephones, including closed-circuit telephones in a building or facility, shall be equipped with a volume control. Such telephones shall be capable of a minimum of 12 dBA and a maximum of 18 dBA above normal. If an automatic reset is provided, 18 dBA may be exceeded. Public telephones with volume control shall be hearing aid compatible and shall be identified by a sign containing a depiction of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves.*

1117B.2.9 Text telephones.

1117B.2.9.1 Where required. *If a total of four or more public pay telephones are provided at the interior and exterior of a site, and if at least one of the total is in an interior location, then at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided.*

Exceptions:

1. *If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a stadium or arena, in a convention center, in a hotel with a convention center, or in a covered mall, at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided in the facility.*

2. *If a public pay telephone is located in or adjacent to a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room or hospital waiting room, one public text telephone shall be provided at each location.*

1117B.2.9.2 General. *Text telephones shall comply with the following requirements:*

1. *Text telephones used with a pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. If an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the text telephone and the telephone receiver.*

2. *Pay telephones designed to accommodate a portable text telephone shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a text telephone and shall have 6 inches (152 mm) minimum vertical clearance in the area where the text telephone is to be placed.*

3. *Equivalent facilitation may be substituted for the requirements of this section. For example, a portable text telephone may be made available in a hotel at a registration desk if it is available on a 24-hour basis for use with nearby public pay phones. In this instance, at least one pay phone shall comply with Item 2. In addition, if an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone handset cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the text telephone and the telephone receiver. Directional signage shall comply with Section 1117B.5.*

1117B.2.9.3 Signage. *Text telephones shall be identified by the International TTY symbol (see Figure 11B-14A). If a facility has a public text telephone, directional signage indicating the location of the nearest such telephone shall be placed adjacent to all banks of telephones that do not contain a text telephone. Such directional signage shall include the International TTY symbol. If a facility has no banks of telephones, the directional signage shall be provided at the entrance or in a building directory.*

1117B.2.10 Controls. *Telephones shall have push-button controls where service for such equipment is available.*

1117B.2.11 Cord length. *The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be at least 29 inches (737 mm) long.*

1117B.2.12 Telephone books. *If telephone books are provided, they shall be located in a position that complies with the reach ranges in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6.*

1117B.3 Kitchens. *See Section 1133A.*

1117B.4 Swimming Pools. *See Section 1104B.4.3.*

1117B.5 Signs and Identification. *~~NOTE:~~ California's standards for signage are more stringent and are significantly larger and wider than Federal law, Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Section 4.30.*

1117B.5.1 General. *When new or additional signs and/or identification devices are provided, or when existing signs and/or identification devices are replaced or altered, the new or altered signs and/or identification devices shall comply with Section 1117B.5. The addition of or replacement of signs and/or identification devices shall not trigger any additional path of travel requirements.*

1. Identification signs. *When signs identify permanent rooms and spaces of a building or site, they shall comply with Sections 1117B.5.2, 1117B.5.3, 1117B.5.5, 1117B.5.6 and 1117B.5.7. ~~NOTES: 1.~~ For other means of egress signs and identification provisions adopted by SFM & DSA-AC see Chapter 10, Sections ~~1003.2.8.1 for Visual Exit Signs, 1003.2.8.2 for Where Required, 1003.2.8.3 for Graphics, 1003.2.8.4 for Illumination, 1003.2.8.5 for Power Source, 1003.2.8.6~~ 1011.3 for Tactile Exit ~~Signage~~ Signs, ~~1003.2.8.6.1 for Where Required, 1003.3.3.13.1~~ 1020.1.6.2 for ~~Tactile Stair Level Identification Sign~~ Tactile Floor Designation Signs in Stairways, ~~and 1003.3.1.10 for Special Egress control Devices.~~ 1008.1.8.6(5) for Delayed Egress Locks, 1007.6.5 for Areas of Refuge, and 1007.7 for Exits and Elevators. ~~2.~~ See also Section 1116B for additional signage requirements applicable to elevators and Section 1115B.5 for sanitary facilities.*

2. Directional and informational signs. *When signs direct to or give information about permanent rooms and space of a building or site, they shall comply with Sections 1117B.5.2, 1117B.5.3 and 1117B.5.4.*

3. Accessibility signs. *When signs identify, direct to or give information about accessible elements and feature of a building or site, they shall include the appropriate symbol of accessibility and shall comply with Sections 1117B.5.2 and~~, when applicable,~~ 1117B.5.8.*

4. Plan Review and Inspection. *Signs and identification as specified in Section 1117B.5.1, when included in the construction of new buildings or facilities, or when included, altered or replaced due to additions, alterations or renovations to existing buildings or facilities, and when a permit is required, shall comply with the following plan review and inspection requirements:*

> ***4.1. Plan review.*** *Plans, specifications or other information indicating compliance with these regulations shall be submitted to the enforcing agency for review and approval.*
>
> ***4.2. Inspection.*** *Signs and identification shall be field inspected after installation and approved by the enforcing agency prior to the issuance of a final certificate of occupancy per Appendix Chapter 1, Section 110.2, or final approval where no certificate of occupancy is issued. The inspection shall include, but not be limited to, verification that Braille dots and cells are properly spaced and the size, proportion, and type of raised characters are in compliance with these regulations.*
>
> ***4.3. Other signs and identification.*** *Tactile exit signage in Sections 1011.3 and 1011.3.2, tactile floor designation signs in stairways in Section 1020.1.6.2, tactile special egress-control device signs in Section 1008.1.8.6(5), elevator car control identification required in Section 1116B.1.9, elevator doorjamb marking required in Section 1116B.1.14, and sanitary facilities signage required in Section 1115B.5 shall also comply with this section.*

1117B.5.2 Finish and contrast. *Characters, symbols and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters and symbols shall contrast with their background, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.*

1117B.5.3 Proportions. *Characters on signs shall have a width to-height ratio of between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke width to height ratio of between 1:5 and 1:10.*

1117B.5.4 Character height. *Characters and numbers on signs shall be sized according to the viewing distance from which they are to be read. The minimum height is measured using an uppercase X. Lowercase characters are permitted. For signs suspended or projected above the finish floor in compliance with Section 1133B.8.6, the minimum character height shall be 3 inches (76 mm).*

1117B.5.5 Raised characters and pictorial symbol signs. *When raised characters are required or when pictorial symbols (pictograms) are used on such signs, they shall conform to the following requirements:*

> ***1. Character type.*** *Characters on signs shall be raised 1/32-inch (0.794 mm) minimum and shall be sans serif uppercase characters accompanied by Grade 2 Braille complying with Section 1117B.5.6.*
>
> ***2. Character size.*** *Raised characters shall be a minimum of 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) and a maximum of 2 inches (51 mm) high.*
>
> ***3. Pictorial symbol signs (pictograms).*** *Pictorial symbol signs (pictograms) shall be accompanied by the verbal description placed directly below the pictogram. The outside dimension of the pictogram field shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) in height.*
>
> ***4. Character placement.*** *Characters and Braille shall be in a horizontal format. Braille shall be placed a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) and a maximum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) directly below the tactile characters; flush left or centered. When tactile text is multi-lined, all Braille shall be placed together below all lines of tactile text.*

1117B.5.6 Braille. *Contracted Grade 2 Braille shall be used wherever Braille is required in other portions of these standards. Dots shall be 1/10 inch (2.54 mm) on centers in each cell with 2/10-inch (5.08 mm) space between cells, measured from the second column of dots in the first cell to the first column of dots in the second cell. Dots shall be raised a minimum of 1/40 inch (0.635 mm) above the background. Braille dots shall be domed or rounded.*

1117B.5.7 Mounting location and height. *Where permanent identification signs are provided for rooms and spaces, signs shall be installed on the wall adjacent to the latch side of the door. Where there is no wall space on the latch side, including at double leaf doors, signs shall be placed on the nearest adjacent wall, preferably on the right.*

Where permanent identification signage is provided for rooms and spaces they shall be located on the approach side of the door as one enters the room or space. Signs that identify exits shall be located on the approach side of the door as one exits the room or space.

Mounting height shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finish floor to the center line of the sign. Mounting location shall be determined so that a person may approach within 3 inches (76 mm) of signage without encountering protruding objects or standing within the swing of a door.

~~NOTE:~~ See also Section 1115B.5 for additional signage requirements applicable to sanitary facilities.

1117B.5.8 Symbols of accessibility.

1117B.5.8.1 Symbols of accessibility. *The International Symbol of Accessibility shall be the standard used to identify facilities that are accessible to and usable by physically disabled persons as set forth in these building standards and as specifically required in this section. See Figure 11B-6.*

> ***Exception:*** *Signs need not be provided for facilities within an adaptable dwelling unit, or within an accessible patient or guest room.*

1117B.5.8.1.1 Color of symbol. *The symbol specified above shall consist of a white figure on a blue background. The blue shall be equal to Color No. 15090 in Federal Standard 595B.*

> ***Exception:*** *The appropriate enforcement agency may approve special signs and identification necessary to complement decor or unique design when it is determined that such signs and identification provide adequate direction to persons with disabilities.*

1117B.5.8.1.2 Entrance signs. *All building entrances that are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities shall be identified with a minimum of one International Symbol of Accessibility and with additional directional signs, utilizing the symbol, at junctions where the accessible route of travel diverges from the regular circulation path, to be visible to persons along approaching ~~pedestrian ways~~ circulation paths.*

1117B.5.8.1.3 Information posted. *Buildings that have been remodeled to provide specific sanitary facilities and/or elevators for public use that conform to these building standards shall have this information posted in the building lobby, preferably as part of the building directory. The information shall be accompanied by the International Symbol of Accessibility.*

1117B.5.8.2 International TTY Symbol. *Where the International TTY Symbol is required, it shall comply with Figure 11B-14A.*

1117B.5.8.3 Volume control telephones. *Where telephones with volume controls are required to be identified, the identification symbol shall be a telephone hand set with radiating sound waves, such as shown in Figure 11B-14B.*

1117B.5.8.4 Assistive listening systems. *Where assistive listening systems are required to be identified by the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss, it shall comply with Figure 11B-14C.*

1117B.5.9 Traffic-control devices. *Pole-supported pedestrian traffic-control buttons shall be identified with color coding consisting of a textured horizontal yellow band 2 inches (51 mm) in width encircling the pole, and a 1-inch wide (25 mm) dark border band above and below this yellow band. Color coding should be placed immediately above the control button. Control buttons shall be located no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the surface adjacent to the pole.*

1117B.5.10 Signs for text telephones. *Whenever signs shall refer to text telephones for people who are deaf or hard of hearing, the term "TTY" shall be used; the term "TDD" shall not be used.*

1117B.5.11 Cleaner air symbol.
"*STRICTLY FOR PUBLICLY FUNDED FACILITIES OR ANY FACILITIES LEASED OR RENTED BY STATE OF CALIFORNIA. NOT CONCESSIONAIRES". This symbol shall be the standard used to identify a room, facility and paths of travel that are accessible to and usable by people who are adversely impacted by airborne chemicals or particulate(s) and/or the use of electrical fixtures and/or devices. When used, the symbol shall comply with Figure 11B-40.*

1117B.5.11.1 Color and size of symbol. *The symbol shall be used when the following minimum conditions are met. The symbol, which shall include the text "Cleaner Air" as shown, shall be displayed either as a negative or positive*

image within a square that is a minimum of 6 inches on each side. The symbol may be shown in black and white or in color. When color is used, it shall be Federal Blue (Color No. 15090 Federal Standard 595B) on white, or white on Federal Blue. There shall be at least a 70% color contrast between the background of the sign from the surface that it is mounted on.

Strictly for publicly funded public facilities or any facilities leased or rented by State of California. Not concessionaires.

1117B.5.11.2 Conditions of use. *Use of the cleaner air symbol is voluntary. The cleaner air symbol shall be permitted for use to identify a path of travel, and a room or a facility when the following is met.*

1. *Floor or wall coverings, floor or wall covering adhesives, carpets, formaldehyde-emitting particleboard cabinetry, cupboards or doors have not been installed or replaced in the previous 12 months.*

2. *Incandescent lighting provided in lieu of fluorescent or halogen lighting, and electrical systems and equipment shall be operable by or on behalf of the occupant or user of the room, facility or path of travel.*

3. *Heating, ventilation, air conditioning and their controls shall be operable by or on behalf of the occupant or user.*

4. *To maintain "cleaner-air" designation only nonirritating, nontoxic products will be used in cleaning, maintenance, disinfection, pest management or for any minimal touch-ups that are essential for occupancy of the area. Deodorizers or Fragrance Emission Devices and Systems (FEDS) shall not be used in the designated area. Pest control practices for cleaner-air areas shall include the use of bait stations using boric acid, sticky traps and silicon caulk for sealing cracks and crevices. Areas shall be routinely monitored for pest problems. Additional nontoxic treatment methods, such as temperature extremes for termites, may be employed in the event of more urgent problems. These pest control practices shall not be used 48 hours prior to placement of the sign, and the facility shall be ventilated with outside air for a minimum of 24 hours following use or application.*

5. *Signage shall be posted requesting occupants or users not to smoke or wear perfumes, colognes or scented personal care products. Fragranced products shall not be used in the designated cleaner-air room, facility or path of travel.*

6. *A log shall be maintained on site, accessible to the public either in person or by telephone, e-mail, fax or other accessible means as requested. One or more individuals shall be designated to maintain the log. The log shall record any product or practice used in the cleaner-air designated room, facility or path of travel, as well as scheduled activities, that may impact the Cleaner-Air designation. The log shall also include the product label as well as the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS).*

1117B.5.11.3 Removal of symbol. *If the path of travel, room and/or facility identified by the cleaner air symbol should temporarily or permanently cease to meet the minimum conditions as set forth above, the cleaner air symbol shall be removed and shall not be replaced until the minimum conditions are again met.*

1117B.6 Controls and Operating Mechanisms. ~~*See also Sections 210-7(g), 380-8(c) and 760-16, California Electrical Code, for electrical installation.*~~

1. General. *Controls and operating mechanisms required to be accessible by* ~~*Section 101.17.11*~~ *Section 109.1 shall comply with the requirements of this section.*

2. Clear floor space. *Clear floor space complying with Section 1118B.4 that allows a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at controls, dispensers, receptacles and other operable equipment.*

3. Height. *The highest operable part of all controls, dispensers, receptacles and other operable equipment shall be placed within at least one of the reach ranges specified in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6. Electrical and communication system receptacles on walls shall be mounted no less than 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.*

> ***Exception:*** *These requirements do not apply where the use of special equipment dictates otherwise or where electrical and communications systems receptacles are not normally intended for use by building occupants.*

4. Operation. *Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N) of force.*

5. Installation heights of electrical switches and receptacle outlets.

(Relocated from the CA Electrical Code 404.8(C)(3))
5.1 Electrical switches. *~~(3) [For DSA-AC] Where access for persons with disabilities is required by Article 89.7, The~~ The center of the grip of the operating handle of controls or switches intended to be used by the occupant of the room or area to control lighting and receptacle outlets, appliances or cooling, heating and ventilating equipment, shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor or working platform.*

(Relocated from the CA Electrical Code 406.3(G)(1))
5.2 Electrical receptacle outlets. *~~(1) [For DSA-AC with exceptions 1, 2, 3 and 4]. Where access for persons with disabilities is required by Article 89.7 the~~ The center of electrical receptacle outlets on branch circuits of 30 amperes or less shall be installed not more than 48 inches nor less than 15 inches above the floor or working platform.*

Exceptions:

*~~Exception No.~~ **1.** Receptacle outlets installed as part of permanently installed baseboard heaters are exempt.*

*~~Exception No.~~ **2.** Required receptacle outlets shall be permitted in floors when adjacent to sliding panels or walls.*

*~~Exception No.~~ **3.** Baseboard electrical outlets used in relocatable partitions, window walls or other electrical convenience floor outlets are not subject to the minimum height requirements.*

*~~Exception No.~~ **4.** This section shall not apply to existing buildings when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these standards would create an unreasonable hardship.*

1117B.7 Automated Teller Machines and Point of Sale Machines.

1117B.7.1 Definitions.

1. AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINE (ATM) *means any electronic information processing device, including a point-of sale machine, used by a financial institution or other business entity and its customers for the primary purpose of executing financial transactions between itself and its customers. For the purposes of this section, automated teller machine includes point-of-sale machines used in grocery stores, ticket sales facilities, and other business entities, but does not include card-reading-devices located on fuel pump islands at gasoline service stations and motor-vehicle fuel facilities.*

2. ATM SITE *means that immediate area which is within or made or to be made part of an existing building or a building to be constructed, and to which one or more ATMs is or shall be affixed.*

3. ATM INSTALLATION *means a single ATM structurally affixed to a building or other structure.*

1117B.7.2 General. *Where ATMs are provided for the public, they shall comply with this section.*

Exceptions:

1. *In grocery stores and other retail outlets with point-of-sale machines located at individual check stands, machines that are located at accessible check stands must be made accessible. Where machines are located away from individual check stands, they must all be made accessible.*

2. *Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this regulation would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided through the use of other methods or materials.*

3. *In existing buildings, these regulations shall not apply when legal or physical constraints would not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

4. *Drive-up-only automated teller machines are not required to comply with this section.*

5. *Card reading devices located on fuel pump islands at gasoline service stations and motor-vehicle fuel facilities are not required to comply with Sections 1114B through 1126B and all subsections there under.*

1117B.7.3 Controls. *Controls for user activation shall comply with the requirements of Section 1117B.6, Item 4, which states that controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N) of force.*

1117B.7.4 Clearances and reach range. *Free-standing or built-in units not having a clear space under them shall comply with the following as to clearance and reach range.*

1117B.7.4.1 Where one ATM is provided. *Where one ATM is provided at a location, it shall meet the specifications of Section 4.34 of the Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) as follows:*

> ***1.*** *The ATM shall be located so that clear floor space complying with Section 1118B.4 is provided to allow a person using a wheelchair to make a forward approach, a parallel approach, or both, to the machine.*
>
> ***2. Forward approach only.*** *If only a forward approach is possible, operable parts of all controls shall be placed within the forward reach range specified in Section 1118B.5.*
>
> ***3. Parallel approach only.*** *If only a parallel approach is possible, operable parts of controls shall be placed as follows:*
>
> > ***3.1. Reach depth not more than 10 inches (254 mm).*** *Where the reach depth to the operable parts of all controls as measured from he vertical plane perpendicular to the edge of the unobstructed clear floor space at the farthest protrusion of the automated teller machine or surround is not more than 10 inches (254 mm), the maximum height from the floor shall be 54 inches (1372 mm).*
> >
> > ***3.2. Reach depth more than 10 inches (254 mm).*** *Where the reach depth to the operable parts of any control as measured from the vertical plane perpendicular to the edge of the unobstructed clear floor space at the farthest protrusion of the ATM or surround is more than 10 inches (254 mm), the maximum height from the floor shall be as shown in Table 11B-5.*
>
> ***4. Forward and parallel approach.*** *If both a forward and parallel approach are possible, operable parts of controls shall be placed within at least one of the reach ranges in Item 2 or 3.*
>
> ***5. Bins.*** *Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type provided shall comply with the applicable reach ranges in Item 2, 3 or 4.*
>
> > ***Exception:*** *Where a function can be performed in a substantially equivalent manner by using an alternate control, only one of the controls needed to perform that function is required to comply with this section. If the controls are identified by tactile markings, such markings shall be provided on both controls.*

1117B.7.4.2 Where two ATMs are provided. *Where two ATMs are provided at a location, one shall comply with Section 1117B.7.4.1, except that the highest operable part shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum. The second ATM is not regulated as to height, including height of display.*

1117B.7.4.3 Where three or more ATMs are provided. *Where three or more ATMs are provided, two shall be used to satisfy Section 1117B.7.4.2, above. For the additional ATMs beyond the first two, at least 50 percent shall comply with Section 1117B.7.4.1. The remainder are not regulated as to height, including height of display. If features provided differ from ATM to ATM, all features shall be equally represented among the accessible ATMs.*

1117B.7.5 Display. *LED, cathode ray, or other screen devices intended to be viewed by the user shall be positioned so they are readily visible to and usable by a person sitting in a wheelchair with approximate eye level of 45 inches (1143 mm), and shall comply with the following requirements:*

~~*NOTE: Automated teller machines allowed to be unregulated as to height in Sections 1117B.7.4 through 1117B.7.4.3 above are also exempt from this section.*~~

> ***1. Vertically mounted screen devices.*** *If mounted vertically or tipped no more than 30 degrees away from the viewer, the center line of screens and other screen devices shall be located a maximum of 52 inches (1321 mm) above grade.*
>
> ***2. Angle-mounted screen devices.*** *If mounted at an angle between 30 degrees and 60 degrees tipped away from the viewer, the center line of screens and other screen devices shall be located a maximum of 44 inches (1118 mm) above grade.*

3. Horizontally mounted screen devices. *If mounted at an angle between 60 degrees and 90 degrees tipped away from the viewer, the center line of screens and other screen devices shall be located a maximum of 34 inches (864 mm) above grade.*

Exception: *Automated teller machines unregulated as to height in Sections 1117B.7.4 through 1117B.7.4.3 above are also exempt from this section.*

TABLE 11B-5 – MAXIMUM REACH DEPTH FOR AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES

REACH DEPTH (X) (Inches)	***MAXIMUM HEIGHT (Y) (Inches)***
× 25.4 for mm	
10	*54*
11	*53.5*
12	*53*
13	*52.5*
14	*51.5*
15	*51*
16	*50.5*
17	*50*
18	*49.5*
19	*49*
20	*48.5*
21	*47.5*
22	*47*
23	*46.5*
24	*46*

~~NOTE:~~ See Figure 11B-5F (d).

1117B.7.6 ATM equipment for persons with vision impairments. *Instructions and all information for use shall be made accessible to and independently usable by persons with vision impairments.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1118B
SPACE ALLOWANCE AND REACH RANGES

1118B.1 Wheelchair Passage Width. *The minimum clear width for single wheelchair passage shall be 32 inches (813 mm) at a point and 36 inches (914 mm) continuously. See Figure 11B-10.*

1118B.2 Width for Wheelchair Passing. *The minimum width for two wheelchairs to pass is 60 inches (1524 mm). See Figure 11B-11.*

1118B.3 Wheelchair Turning Space. *The space required for a wheelchair to make a 180 degree turn is a clear space of 60 inches (1524 mm) diameter [see Figure 11B-12 (a)] or a T-shaped space. See Figure 11B-12 (b).*

1118B.4 Clear Floor or Ground Space for Wheelchairs.

1. Size and approach. *The minimum clear floor or ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant is 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm). The minimum clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be positioned for forward or parallel approach to an object. Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be part of the knee space required under some objects. See Figure 11B-5A.*

2. Relationship of maneuvering clearances to wheelchair spaces. *One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route or adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space. If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or a part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided as shown in Figure 11B-5A (b). See Figure 11B-5A.*

1118B.5 Forward Reach. *If the clear floor space allows only forward approach to an object, the maximum high forward reach allowed shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) [see Figure 11B-5C (b)]. The minimum low forward reach is 15*

inches (381 mm). If the high forward reach is over an obstruction, reach and clearances shall be as shown in Figure 11B-5C (b).

1118B.6 Side reach. *If the clear floor space allows parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair, the maximum high side reach allowed shall be 54 inches (1372 mm) and the low side reach shall be no less than 9 inches (229 mm) above the floor [see Figure 11B-5D (a) and (b)]. If the side reach is over an obstruction, the reach and clearances shall be as shown in Figure 11B-5D (c). See Figure 11B-5D.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1119B
SPECIAL STANDARDS OF ACCESSIBILITY FOR BUILDINGS WITH HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

See Section 1135B.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1120B
FLOORS AND LEVELS

1120B.1 Floors Within Each Story. *In buildings and facilities, floors of a given story shall be a common level throughout, or shall be connected by pedestrian ramps, passenger elevators or special access lifts.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings, other than dining banquet and bar facilities, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *In existing dining, banquet and bar facilities, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted provided that a minimum of 75 percent of the dining, banquet and bar area shall be a common level throughout or shall be connected by pedestrian ramps, passenger elevators or special lifts. ~~See Section 101.17.11, Item 1.4, for new buildings only.~~*

3. *In existing buildings, this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints would not allow compliance with this section or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

4. *Where specifically exempted in other portions of this code.*

1120B.2 Floor Surface. *The surface of floors shall be slip resistant and shall comply with Section 1124B.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1121B
RESERVED

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1122B
FIXED OR BUILT-IN SEATING, TABLES, AND COUNTERS

1122B.1 Minimum Number. *Where fixed or built-in seating, tables, or counters are provided for the public, and in general employee areas, 5 percent, but never less than one, must be accessible as provided in this section.*

1122B.2 Seating. *If seating spaces for persons in wheelchairs are provided at fixed tables or counters, clear floor space complying with Section 1118B.4 shall be provided. Such clear floor space shall not overlap knee space by more than 19 inches (483 mm) (see Figure 11B-13).*

1122B.3 Knee Clearance. *If seating for persons in wheelchairs is provided at fixed tables or counters, knee spaces at least 27 inches (686 mm) high, 30 inches (762 mm) wide and 19 inches (483 mm) deep shall be provided (see Figure 11B-13).*

> ***Exception:*** *Knee clearance is not required at checkout counters or service counters.*

1122B.4 Height of Work Surfaces. *The tops of tables and counters shall be 28 inches to 34 inches (711 mm to 864 mm) from the floor or ground.*

Where a single counter contains more than one transaction station, such as (but not limited to) a bank counter with multiple teller windows or a retail sales counter with multiple cash register stations, at least 5 percent, but never less than one, of each type of station shall be located at a section of counter that is at least 36 inches (914 mm) long and no more than 28 to 34 inches (711 to 864 mm) high.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1123B
ACCESS TO EMPLOYEE AREAS

1123B.1 General. *Employee areas shall conform to all requirements of Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance in the California Building Code, Plumbing Code and Electrical Code.*

1123B.2 Work Stations. *Specific work stations need only comply with aisle width (Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2) and floors and levels (Section 1120B), and entryways shall be 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width.*

> ***Exception:*** *Accessibility is not required to (1) observation galleries used primarily for security purposes; or (2) in nonoccupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways, or freight (nonpassenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair purposes; such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, mechanical rooms, piping or equipment catwalks.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1124B
GROUND AND FLOOR SURFACES

1124B.1 General. *Ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible rooms and spaces, including floors, walks, ramps, stairs and curb ramps, shall be stable, firm, slip resistant, and shall comply with this section.*

1124B.2 Changes in Level. *Changes in level up to 1/4 inch (~~6 mm~~ 6.4 mm) may be vertical and without edge treatment [see Figure 11B-5E (c)~~ and (d)~~]. Changes in level between 1/4 inch (~~6 mm~~ 6.4 mm) and 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2 [see Figure 11B-5E (d)]. Changes in level greater than ½ inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a curb ramp, ramp, elevator, or platform lift that complies with Section 1127B.5, 1133B.5, 1116B.1, or 1116B.2, respectively. ~~Figure 11B-5E (d).~~*

1124B.3 Carpet. *If carpet or carpet tile is used on a ground or floor surface, then it shall be securely attached; have a firm cushion, pad or backing or no cushion or pad; and have a level loop, textured loop; level-cut pile, or level-cut/uncut pile texture. The maximum pile height shall be 1/2 inch (12.7 mm). Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with Section 1124B.2.*

1124B.4 Gratings. *If gratings are located in walking surfaces, then they shall have spaces no greater than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide in one direction (see Figure 11B-7B). If gratings have elongated openings, then they shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel (see Figure 11B-7B).*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1125B
STORAGE

1125B.1 General. *If fixed storage facilities such as cabinets, shelves, closets or drawers are provided where access is required by ~~Section 101.17.11~~ Section 109.1, at least one of each type shall comply with this section. Additional storage may be provided outside of the reach ranges shown in Figure 11B-5D.*

1125B.2 Clear Floor Space. *A clear floor space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) complying with Section 1118B.4 that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at accessible storage facilities.*

1125B.3 Height. *Accessible storage spaces shall be within at least one of the reach ranges specified in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6. Clothes rods shall be a maximum of 54 inches (1372 mm) from the floor for a side approach (See Figure 11B-5D). Where the distance from the wheelchair to the clothes rod or shelf exceeds 10 inches (254 mm), as in closets without accessible doors, the height and depth to the rod or shelf shall comply with Figure 11B-5D.*

1125B.4 Hardware. *Hardware for accessible storage facilities shall comply with Section 1117B.6. Touch latches and U-shaped pulls are acceptable.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1126B
VENDING MACHINES

Install vending machines in compliance with Section 1117B.6, "Controls and Operating Mechanisms."

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

Division II – SITE ACCESSIBILITY

SECTION 1127B
EXTERIOR ROUTES OF TRAVEL

1127B.1 General. *Site development and grading shall be designed to provide access to all entrances and exterior ground floor exits, and access to normal paths of travel, and where necessary to provide access, shall incorporate pedestrian ramps, curb ramps, etc. When more than one building or facility is located on a site, accessible routes of travel shall be provided between buildings and accessible site facilities. The accessible route of travel shall be the most practical direct route between accessible building entrances, accessible site facilities and the accessible entrance to the site.*

Exceptions:
1. *Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations would create an unreasonable hardship because of topography, natural barriers, etc., an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided through the use of other methods and materials.*

2. *In existing buildings, this section shall not apply in those conditions where, due to legal or physical constraints, the site of the project would not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship.*

~~NOTE:~~ See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.

1127B.2 Design and Construction. *When accessibility is required by this section, it shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this Building Code. See Section 1114B.1 for a list of applicable sections.*

1127B.3 Signs. *At every primary public entrance and at every major junction where the accessible route of travel diverges from the regular circulation path along or leading to an accessible route of travel, entrance, or facility, there shall be a sign displaying the International Symbol of Accessibility. Signs shall indicate the direction to accessible building entrances and facilities and shall comply with the requirements found in Sections 1117B.5.1 Item 2 and 1117B.5.8.1.*

1127B.4 Outside Stairways. *~~Where stairways occur outside a building, refer to Sections 1006.17 of the 1995 California Building Code, 1115A and 1133B.4.4.~~ See Section 1133B.4.*

1127B.5 Curb Ramps.

1. General. *Curb ramps shall be constructed at each corner of street intersections and where a pedestrian way crosses a curb. The preferred and recommended location for curb ramps is in the center of the crosswalk of each street corner. Where it is necessary to locate a curb ramp in the center of the curb return and the street surfaces are marked to identify pedestrian crosswalks, the lower end of the curb ramp shall terminate within such crosswalk areas. See Figure 11B-20C, Case E.*

2. Width of curb ramps. *Curb ramps shall be a minimum of 4 feet (1219 mm) in width and shall lie, generally, in a single sloped plane, with a minimum of surface warping and cross slope.*

3. Slope of curb ramps. *The slope of curb ramps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope). Transitions from ramps to walks, gutters, or streets shall be flush and free of abrupt changes, except that curb ramps shall comply with Item 5 below. Maximum slopes of adjoining gutters, road surface immediately adjacent to the curb ramp, or accessible route shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 20 units horizontal (5% slope) within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the top and bottom of the curb ramp. The slope of the fanned or flared sides of curb ramps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 10 units horizontal (10% slope).*

4. Level landing. *A level landing 4 feet (1219 mm) deep shall be provided at the upper end of each curb ramp over its full width to permit safe egress from the ramp surface, or the slope of the fanned or flared sides of the curb ramp shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope).*

5. Beveled lip. *The lower end of each curb ramp shall have a 1/2 inch (13 mm) lip beveled at 45 degrees as a detectable way finding edge for persons with visual impairment.*

6. Finish. *The surface of each curb ramp and its flared sides shall be stable, firm and slip-resistant and shall be of contrasting finish from that of the adjacent sidewalk.*

7. Border. *All curb ramps shall have a grooved border 12 inches (305 mm) wide at the level surface of the sidewalk along the top and each side approximately 3/4 inch (19 mm) on center. All curb ramps constructed between the face of the curb and the street shall have a grooved border at the level surface of the sidewalk. See Figures 11B-19A and 11B-19B.*

8. Detectable warnings. *A curb ramp shall have a detectable warning that extends the full width and depth of the curb ramp inside the grooved border when the ramp slope is less than 1 unit vertical to 15 units horizontal (6.7% slope). Detectable warnings shall consist of raised truncated domes with a diameter of nominal 0.9 inch (22.9 mm) at the base tapering to 0.45 inch (11.4 mm) at the top, a height of nominal 0.2 inch (5.08 mm) and a center-to-center spacing of nominal 2.35 inches (59.7 mm) in compliance with Figure 11B-23A. "Nominal" here shall be in accordance with Section 12-11A and B-102, State Referenced Standards Code. The detectable warning shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. The material used to provide contrast shall be an integral part of the walking surface. The domes may be constructed in a variety of methods, including cast in place or stamped, or may be part of a prefabricated surface treatment.*

Only approved DSA-AC detectable warning products and directional surfaces shall be installed as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 1, Articles 2, 3 and 4. Refer to CCR Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-11A and B, for building and facility access specifications for product approval for detectable warning products and directional surfaces.

~~NOTE:~~Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are for use in residential housing evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.

9. Obstructions. *Curb ramps shall be located or protected to prevent their obstruction by parked cars.*

10. Diagonal curb ramps. *If diagonal (or corner-type) curb ramps have returned curbs or other well-defined edges, such edges shall be parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum clear space as shown in Figure 11B-22 (c) and (d). If diagonal curb ramps are provided at marked crossings, the 48-inch (1219 mm) clear space shall be within the markings (see Figure 11B-20B, Cases C and D). If diagonal curb ramps have flared sides, they shall also have at least a 24-inch-long (610 mm) segment of straight curb located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing [see Figure 11B-22 (c)].*

NOTES:

1. *For additional curb details, see Figures 11B-19A and 11B-19B.*

2. *If distance from curb to back of sidewalk is too short to accommodate ramp and a 4-foot (1219 mm) platform as in Figure 11B-20A,Case A, the side walk may be depressed longitudinally as in Figure 11B-20A, Case B, or Figure 11B-20B, Case C, or may be widened as in Figure 11B-20B, Case D.*

3. *If sidewalk is less than 5 feet (1524 mm) wide, the full width of the sidewalk shall be depressed as shown in Figure 11B-20B, Case C.*

4. *As an alternate to Figure 11B-20A, Case A, one ramp may be placed in the center of the curb return as in Figure 11B-20C, Case E.*

5. *When ramp is located in center of curb return, crosswalk configuration must be similar to that shown on the plan to accommodate wheelchairs. (See Figure 11B-22.)*

6. *If planting area width is equal to or greater than ramp length, ramp side slope distance equals 3 feet (914 mm). (See Figure 11B-20D, Case G.)*

7. *For Figure 11B-20C, Case F and Figure 11B-20D, Case G, the longitudinal portion of the sidewalk may need to be depressed as shown in Figure 11B-20A, Case B.*

8. *If located on a curve, the sides of the ramp need not be parallel, but the minimum width of the ramp shall be 4 feet (1219 mm).*

9. *The ramp shall have a 12 inch-wide (305 mm) border with 1/4 inch (6 mm) grooves approximately 3/4 inch (19 mm) on center. See grooving detail, Figure 11B-20 D, Case H.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1128B
PEDESTRIAN GRADE SEPARATIONS (OVERPASSES AND UNDERPASSES)

Pedestrian ramps on pedestrian grade separations shall comply with the requirements of Section 1133B.5 for ramps.

Cross slopes of walking surfaces shall be the minimum possible and shall not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm) per foot (2.083% gradient). The slope of any appreciably warped walking surface shall not exceed 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope) in any direction. Where pedestrian grade separations cross streets or other vehicular traffic ways, and where a street level crossing can reasonably and safely be used by persons with physical disabilities, there shall be provided conforming curb ramps and a usable pathway.

Exceptions:
1. *When the grade differential of the walking surface of a pedestrian grade separation exceeds 14 feet (4267 mm) due to required height clearance and grade conditions, and the enforcing agency finds that because of right-of-way restrictions, topography or natural barriers, wheelchair accessibility or equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship, such accessibility need not be provided. However, the requirements in these regulations relating to other types of mobility shall be complied with.*

2. *For existing facilities, this section shall not apply where, due to legal or physical constraints, the site of the project will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship.*

~~NOTE~~See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1129B
ACCESSIBLE PARKING REQUIRED

1129B.1 General. *Each lot or parking structure where parking is provided for the public as clients, guests or employees, shall provide accessible parking as required by this section. Accessible parking spaces serving a particular building shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel from adjacent parking to an accessible entrance. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building, accessible parking shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility. In buildings with multiple accessible entrances with adjacent parking, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located closest to the accessible entrances. Table 11B-6 establishes the number of accessible parking spaces required.*

Exception: *This subsection shall not apply to existing facilities where compliance with local ordinances precludes satisfying the above requirements or of providing equivalent facilitation unless a change of occupancy occurs.*

1129B.2 Medical Care Outpatient Facilities. *At facilities providing medical care and other services for persons with mobility impairments, parking spaces complying with this section shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-6 except as follows:*

1. Outpatient units and facilities. *Ten percent of the total number of parking spaces provided serve each such outpatient unit or facility.*

2. Units and facilities that specialize in treatment or services for persons with mobility impairments. *Twenty percent of the total number of parking spaces provided serve each such unit or facility.*

TABLE 11B-6 – SPACES REQUIRED

Establishes the number of accessible parking spaces required.

TOTAL NUMBER OF PARKING SPACES IN LOT OR GARAGE	***MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF SPACES***
1-25	*1*
26-50	*2*
51-75	*3*
76-100	*4*
101-150	*5*
151-200	*6*
201-300	*7*
301-400	*8*
401-500	*9*
501-1,000	*****
1,001 and over	******

****Two percent of total.*

***Twenty plus one for each 100, or fraction over 1,001.*

1129B.3 Parking Space Size. *Accessible parking spaces shall be located as near as practical to a primary entrance and shall be sized as follows:*

1. Dimensions. *Where single spaces are provided, they shall be 14 feet (4267 mm) wide and lined to provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) parking area and a 5-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading access aisle on the passenger side of the vehicle. When more than one space is provided in lieu of providing a 14-foot-wide (4267 mm) space for each parking space, two spaces can be provided within a 23-foot-wide (7010 mm) area lined to provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) parking area on each side of a 5-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading access aisle in the center. The minimum length of each parking space shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). The words NO PARKING shall be painted on the ground within each five-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading access aisle. This notice shall be painted in white letters no less than 12 inches (305 mm) high and located so that it is visible to traffic enforcement officials. See Figures 11B-18A, 11B-18B and 11B-18C.*

2. Van space(s). *One in every eight accessible spaces, but not less than one, shall be served by an access aisle 96 inches (2438 mm) wide minimum placed on the side opposite the driver's side when the vehicle is going forward into the parking space and shall be designated van accessible as required by Section 1129B.4. All such spaces may be grouped on one level of a parking structure. The words NO PARKING shall be painted on the ground within each eight-foot (2438 mm) loading and unloading access aisle. This notice shall be painted in white letters no less than 12 inches (305 mm) high and located so that it is visible to traffic enforcement officials. See Figures 11B-18A, 11B-18B and 11B-18C.*

3. Arrangement of parking space. *In each parking area, a bumper or curb shall be provided and located to prevent encroachment of cars over the required width of walkways. Also, the space shall be so located that persons with disabilities are not compelled to wheel or walk behind parked cars other than their own. Pedestrian ways which are accessible to persons with disabilities shall be provided from each such parking space to related facilities, including curb cuts or ramps as needed. Ramps shall not encroach into any accessible parking space or the adjacent access aisle. The maximum cross slope in any direction of an accessible parking space and adjacent access aisle shall not exceed 2%.*

Exceptions: *See Figures 11B-18A through 11B-18C.*

1. *Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation of this section would create an unreasonable hardship, a variance or waiver may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *Parking spaces may be provided which would require a person with a disability to wheel or walk behind other than accessible parking spaces when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations or providing equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship.*

~~NOTE:~~ See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.

4. Slope of parking space. *Surface slopes of accessible parking spaces shall be the minimum possible and shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 50 units horizontal (2% slope) in any direction.*

1129B.4 Identification of Parking Spaces for Off-Street Parking Facilities. *Each parking space reserved for persons with disabilities shall be identified by a reflectorized sign permanently posted immediately adjacent to and visible from each stall or space, consisting of a profile view of a wheelchair with occupant in white on dark blue background. The sign shall not be smaller than 70 square inches (4516 mm2) in area and, when in a path of travel, shall be posted at a minimum height of 80 inches (2032 mm) from the bottom of the sign to the parking space finished grade. Signs may also be centered on the wall at the interior end of the parking space at a minimum height of 36 inches (914 mm) from the parking space finished grade, ground or sidewalk. Spaces complying with Section 1129B.3, Item 2 shall have an additional sign stating "Van-Accessible" mounted below the symbol of accessibility.*

An additional sign shall also be posted in a conspicuous place at each entrance to off-street parking facilities, or immediately adjacent to and visible from each stall or space. The sign shall not be less than 17 inches by 22 inches (432 mm by 559 mm) in size with lettering not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height, which clearly and conspicuously states the following:

> *"Unauthorized vehicles parked in designated accessible spaces not displaying distinguishing placards or license plates issued for persons with disabilities may be towed away at owner's expense. Towed vehicles may be reclaimed at _ or by telephoning _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

shall be located on a surface with a slope not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2% slope). If there are curbs between the access aisle and the vehicle pull-up space, a curb ramp shall be provided.

2. Vertical Clearance. *Provide minimum vertical clearance of 114 inches (2896 mm) at accessible passenger loading zones and along at least one vehicle access route to such areas from site entrances and exits.*

1131B.3 Valet Parking. *Valet parking facilities shall provide a passenger loading zone complying with Section 1131B.2 above and shall be located on an accessible route to the entrance of the facility. The parking space requirements of Sections 1129B through 1130B apply to facilities with valet parking.*

1131B.4 Bus Stop Pads and Shelters. *Where provided, provide bus stop pads 96 inches (2438 mm) long (measured parallel to curb or road edge) to the maximum extent allowed by legal or site constraints. Bus stop pads shall connect to an accessible route. Newly constructed bus stop pads must provide a square curb surface between the pad and road or other detectable warning in accordance with Section 1133B.8.5.*

~~NOTE:~~ Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are used in residential housing evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.

Bus stop pads shall be at same slope as roadway in the direction parallel to roadway, and maximum 2 percent slope perpendicular to roadway.

Where provided, provide bus stop shelters installed so as to permit a wheelchair user to enter the shelter and access a clear floor area of 30 by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm), completely within the shelter. Bus stop shelters shall connect to an accessible route and to bus stop pads. Only approved DSA-AC detectable warning products and directional surfaces shall be installed as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 1, Articles 2, 3 and 4. Refer to CCR Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-11A and B, for building and facility access specifications for product approval for detectable warning products and directional surfaces.

~~NOTE:~~ Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are for use in residential housing, evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1132B
OUTDOOR OCCUPANCIES

1132B.1 General. *Outdoor occupancies shall be accessible as required in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

1132B.2 Parks and Recreational Areas. *The following parks and recreational areas shall comply with these regulations.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance would create an unreasonable hardship, a variance shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *Where the enforcing agency finds that, in specific areas, the natural environment would be materially damaged by compliance with these regulations, such areas shall be subject to these regulations only to the extent that such material damage would not occur.*

3. *Automobile access shall not be provided or paths of travel shall not be made accessible when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations would create an unreasonable hardship.*

1. Campsites. *Campsites, a minimum of two and no fewer than three for each 100 campsites provided, shall be accessible by level path or ramp and shall have travel routes with slopes not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope) to sanitary facilities. Permanent sanitary facilities serving campgrounds shall be accessible to wheelchair occupants.*

2. Beaches, picnic areas. *Beaches, picnic areas, day-use areas, vista points and similar areas shall be accessible.*

3. Sanitary facilities. *Sanitary facilities, to the extent that such facilities are provided, each public use area that is accessible to wheelchair occupants by automobile, walks or other paths of travel.*

4. Boat docks. *Boat docks, fishing piers, etc., shall be accessible.*

5. Parking lots. *Parking lots shall be provided with accessible parking spaces and with curb cuts leading to all adjacent walks, paths or trails.*

6. Trails and paths. *Trails, paths and nature walk areas, or portions of these, shall be constructed with gradients which will permit at least partial use by wheelchair occupants. Hard surface paths or walks shall be provided to serve buildings and other functional areas.*

7. Nature trails. *Nature trails and similar educational and informational areas shall be accessible to the blind by the provision of rope guidelines, raised Arabic numerals and symbols for identification, information signs, and related guide and assistance devices.*

~~NOTE:~~ For museums, orientation buildings, visitor centers, office buildings, retail stores, restaurants, etc., and sanitary facilities serving these uses, see Sections 1104B through 1111B and sections listed in Section 1114B.1.1.

1132B.3 Highway Rest Areas. *The specific standards of accessibility for highway rest areas and similar facilities shall be as follows in Section 1132B.3.1, subject to other provisions in these regulations.*

1132B.3.1 Permanent facilities. *At least one kind of permanent functional area or facility, as applicable, shall be accessible to persons with disabilities, including:*

1. *A sanitary facility for each sex.*

2. *At least one picnic table and one additional table for each 20 tables, or fraction thereof provided.*

3. *Information and display areas.*

4. *Drinking fountains.*

5. *At least one parking space.*

6. *Curb ramps conforming to Section 1127B.5 shall be provided at pedestrian ways where appropriate.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

Division III – ACCESSIBILITY FOR ENTRANCES, EXITS AND PATHS OF TRAVEL

This division includes additional requirements which supersede less restrictive requirements in Chapter 10 where access is required.

SECTION 1133B
GENERAL ACCESSIBILITY FOR ENTRANCES, EXITS AND PATHS OF TRAVEL

1133B.1 Building Accessibility. *See this chapter.*

1133B.1.1 Entrances.

1133B.1.1.1 Entrances *and exterior ground floor exit doors.*

1133B.1.1.1.1 *All entrances and exterior ground-floor exit doors to buildings and facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities. Doorways shall have a minimum clear opening of 32 inches (813 mm) with the door open 90 degrees, measured between the face of the door and the opposite stop. Openings more than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth shall comply with Section~~s~~ 1118B.1~~ and 1118B.2~~.*

Exceptions:

1. *Exterior ground-floor exits serving smoke-proof enclosures, stairwells and exit doors servicing stairs only need not be made accessible.*

2. *Exits in excess of those required by ~~Section 1114B.2.1~~ Chapter 10, and which are more than 24 inches (610 mm) above grade are not required to be accessible. Such doors shall have signs warning that they are not accessible. Warning signs shall comply with Section 1117B.5.1 Item 2.*

3. *In existing buildings where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with the building standards of this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided. Equivalent facilitation would require at least one entrance to be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

4. *These building standards shall not apply to existing buildings when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5, Special Conditions for Persons with Disabilities Requiring Appeals Action Ratification.*

1133B.1.1.1.2 Temporary restrictions. *During periods of partial or restricted use of a building or facility, the entrances used for primary access shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

1133B.1.1.1.3 Recessed doormats. *Recessed doormats shall be adequately anchored to prevent interference with wheelchair traffic.*

1133B.1.1.1.4 Gates. *All gates, including ticket gates, shall meet all applicable specifications for doors.*

1133B.2 Doors.

1133B.2.1 Type of lock or latch. *See Chapter 10, Section ~~1003.3.1.8.~~ 1008.1.8.*

1133B.2.2 Width and height. *Every required exit doorway shall be of a size as to permit the installation of a door not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height.*

When installed in exit doorways, exit doors shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees and shall be so mounted that the clear width of the exitway is not less than 32 inches (813 mm). In computing the exit width the net dimension of the exitway shall be used.

1133B.2.3 Hinged doors. *For hinged doors, the opening width shall be measured with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

1133B.2.3.1 Pairs of doors. *Where a pair of doors is utilized, at least one of the doors shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) with the leaf positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

1133B.2.3.2 Automatic doors. *When an automatic door operator is utilized to operate a pair of doors, at least one of the doors shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

Exceptions:

1. *The provisions of Section 1133B.2.3 shall not apply to existing buildings, except when otherwise required under conditions applicable to access for persons with disabilities. In existing buildings, the following shall apply:*

Where the occupant load is less than 10, except Group I, Division 1 Occupancies, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.

Where occupant load is greater than 10 and it is determined that compliance with Section 1133B.2.3 would create an unreasonable hardship, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.

2. *In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

1133B.2.3.3 Revolving doors. *Revolving doors shall not be used as a required entrance for persons with disabilities.*

1133B.2.3.4 Turnstiles, rails and pedestrian controls. *Where turnstiles and crowd control barriers are utilized in a facility for the purpose of providing fully controlled access, such as where an admission price is charged, a door or gate that is accessible to persons with disabilities shall be provided adjacent to each turnstile exit or entrance. This alternate passageway shall be maintained in an unlocked condition during business hours and the door or gate shall not activate a publicly audible alarm system. The door or gate may be latched where all gates are restricted and controlled by an attendant and a sign is posted stating, "all gates are restricted and controlled by an attendant". The accessible door or gate shall provide the same use pattern. Where posts, rails or other pedestrian controls are utilized to create crowd control aisles or lanes, a minimum of one lane shall be accessible and shall provide a minimum aisle width no less than indicated in Figure 11B-5E (a) and (b) with 32 inches (813 mm) of clear opening.*

Exception: *In existing buildings, Section 1133B.2.3 shall not apply when physical constraints or equivalent facilitation will not allow compliance with these building standards without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

1133B.2.4 Floor level at doors. *Regardless of the occupant load, there shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door.*

1133B.2.4.1 Thresholds. *The floor or landing shall not be more than ½ inch (12.7 mm) lower than the threshold of the doorway. Change in level between ¼ inch (6 mm) and ½ inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50% slope). Change in level greater than ½ inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp. ~~NOTE: [For DSA-AC]~~ See Section 1133B.5.1.*

1133B.2.4.2 Maneuvering clearances at doors. *Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors shall be as shown in Figure 11B-26A and 11B-26B. The floor or ground area within the required clearances shall be level and clear.*

The level area shall have a length in the direction of door swing of at least 60 inches (1524 mm) and the length opposite the direction of door swing of 48 inches (1219 mm) as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position.

Exceptions:

1. *The length opposite the direction of door swing shall be a minimum of 44 inches (1118 mm) where the door has no closer and approach to the door by a person in a wheelchair can be made from the latch side, or if the door has neither latch nor closer and approach can be made from the hinge side. See Figure 11B-26A and 11B-26B.*

2. *In Group R Occupancies, the level area shall have a length both in the direction of door swing and opposite the direction of door swing of 44 inches (1118 mm) as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position.*

1133B.2.4.3 *The width of the level area on the side to which the door swings shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of the door for exterior doors and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior doors.*

~~NOTE:~~ Twenty-four inches (610 mm) is preferred for strike-side clearance.

1133B.2.4.4 *The space between two consecutive door openings in a vestibule, serving other than a required exit stairway shall provide a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) of clear space from any door opening into such vestibule when the door is positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.*

1133B.2.4.5 *Where a door required to be accessible by Section 1133B.1.1.1 is located in a recess or alcove where the distance from the face of the wall to the face of the door is greater than 8 inches, strike side clearances as prescribed in Section 1133B.2.4.3 shall be provided. See Figure 11B-33(a).*

1133B.2.5 Closer-effort to operate doors. *Maximum effort to operate doors shall not exceed 5 pounds ~~(38 N)~~ (22.2 N) for exterior and interior doors, such pull or push effort being applied at right angles to hinged doors and at the center plane of sliding or folding doors. Compensating devices or automatic door operators may be utilized to meet the above standards. When fire doors are required, the maximum effort to operate the door may be increased to the minimum allowable by the appropriate administrative authority, not to exceed 15 pounds (66.72 N).*

1133B.2.5.1 Door closer. *If the door has a closer, then the sweep period of the closer shall be adjusted so that from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the ~~landing~~ leading edge of the door.*

1133B.2.5.2 *Hand-activated door opening hardware shall be centered between 30 inches (762 mm) and 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. Latching and locking doors that are hand-activated and which are in a path of travel shall be operable with a single effort by lever-type hardware, panic bars, push-pull activating bars or other hardware designed to provide passage without requiring the ability to grasp the opening hardware. Locked exit doors shall operate as above in egress direction. Doors to individual hotel or motel units shall operate similarly, except that when a bolt and unlatching operation is key operated from corridor or exterior side of unit door, large bow keys 2 inches (51 mm) (full bow) or 1-¼ inches (32 mm) (half bow) shall be provided in lieu of lever-type hardware on the corridor side.*

Separate deadlock activation on room side of corridor doors in hotels or motels shall have lever handle or large thumb turn on an easily reached location.

1133B.2.5.3 Recessed doors. *Where the plane of the doorway is offset 8 or more inches (205 mm) from any obstruction within 18 inches (455 mm) measured laterally on the latch side, the door shall be provided with maneuvering clearance for front approach. See Figure 11B-33(a).*

1133B.2.6 Smooth surface. *The bottom 10 inches (254 mm) of all doors except automatic and sliding shall have a smooth, uninterrupted surface to allow the door to be opened by a wheelchair footrest without creating a trap or hazardous condition. Where narrow frame doors are used, a 10-inch (254 mm) high smooth panel shall be installed on the push side of the door, which will allow the door to be opened by a wheelchair footrest without creating a trap or hazardous condition.*

1133B.3 Corridors, Hallways and Exterior Exit Balconies.

1133B.3.1 Corridor and hallway widths. *Every corridor and hallway serving an occupant load of 10 or more shall not be less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width. Corridors and hallways serving an occupant load of less than 10 shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*

1133B.3.2 Corridors and hallways over 200 feet (60 960 mm). *Corridors and hallways that are located on an accessible route and exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) in length shall have a minimum clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm) clear width, then passing spaces at least 60 inches by 60 inches (1524mmby 1524 mm) shall be located at reasonable intervals not to exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). A "T" intersection of two corridors or walks is an acceptable passing place.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any building standard under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such building standard shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

***1133B.4 Stairways*.**

1133B.4.1 Handrails.

1133B.4.1.1 Required handrails. *Stairways shall have handrails on each side, and every stairway required to be more than 88 inches (2235 mm) in width shall be provided with not less than one intermediate handrail for each 88 inches (2235 mm) of required width.*

Intermediate handrails shall be spaced approximately equally across with the entire width of the stairway.

Exceptions:

1. *Stairways serving one individual dwelling unit in Group R, Division 1 or 3 Occupancies may have one handrail, except that stairways open on one or both sides shall have handrails on the open side or sides.*

2. *Private stairways 30 inches (762 mm) or less in height may have handrails on one side only.*

1133B.4.2 Handrail configuration.

1133B.4.2.1 *Handrails shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the nosing of the treads.*

1133B.4.2.2 *Handrails shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the top nosing and 12 inches (305 mm), plus the tread width, beyond the bottom nosing.*

1133B.4.2.3 *Ends shall be returned or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals.*

1133B.4.2.4 *Where the extension of the handrail in the direction of the stair run would create a hazard, the termination of the extension shall be made either rounded or returned smoothly to floor, wall or post. Where the stairs are continuous from landing to landing, the inner rail shall be continuous and need not extend out into the landing.*

1133B.4.2.5 *Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of 1-½ inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrail.*

Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. Handrails shall not rotate in their fittings.

1133B.4.2.6 Handgrips.

1133B.4.2.6.1 *The handgrip portion of handrails shall be not less than 1-¼ inches (32 mm) nor more than 1-½ inches (38 mm) in cross-sectional nominal dimension or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. The handgrip portion of handrails shall have a smooth surface with no sharp corners. Gripping surfaces (top or sides) shall be uninterrupted by newel posts, other construction elements or obstructions. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any requirement under Section 1133B.4.2 would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to the requirement for persons with disabilities may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *These regulations shall not apply in existing buildings where legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

1133B.4.2.6.2 *The orientation of at least one handrail shall be in the direction of the run of the stair and perpendicular to the direction of the stair nosing, and shall not reduce the minimum required width of the stairs.*

1133B.4.3 ~~Tactile stair level identification signage.~~ Tactile floor designation signs in stairways. *Tactile ~~stair level identification~~ floor designation signs that comply with Section 1117B.5 Item 1 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed stairways in buildings two or more stories in height to identify the floor level. At exit discharge level, the sign shall include a raised five pointed star located to the left of the identifying floor level. The outside diameter of the star shall be the same as the height of the raised characters.*

1133B.4.4 Striping for the visually impaired. *The upper approach and the lower tread of each stair shall be marked by a strip of clearly contrasting color at least 2 inches (51 mm) wide placed parallel to and [not more than 1*

inch (25.4 mm) from] the nose of the step or landing to alert the visually impaired. The strip shall be of material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair.

Where stairways occur outside a building, the upper approach and all treads shall be marked by a strip of clearly contrasting color at least 2 inches (51 mm) wide and placed parallel to and not more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) from the nose of the step or landing to alert the visually impaired. The strip shall be of a material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair. A painted strip shall be acceptable.

1133B.4.5 Treads, nosing and risers.

1133B.4.5.1 Treads. *All tread surfaces shall be slip resistant. Weather-exposed stairs and their approaches shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on the walking surfaces. Treads shall have a smooth, rounded or chamfered exposed edges, and no abrupt edges at the nosing (lower front edge).*

1133B.4.5.2 Nosing. *Nosing shall not project more than 1-½ inch (38 mm) past the face of the riser below.*

1133B.4.5.3 Open risers are not permitted. *On any given flight of stairs, all steps shall have uniform riser height and uniform tread widths consistent with Section 1133B.4. Stair treads shall be no less than 11 inches (279 mm) deep, measured from riser to riser See Figure 11B-35. Risers shall be sloped or the underside of the nosing shall have an angle not less than 60 degrees from the horizontal.*

Exceptions:

1. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any requirement under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to persons with disabilities requirements may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.

2. These regulations shall not apply to existing buildings when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.

1133B.5 Ramps.

1133B.5.1 General. *Ramps used as exits shall conform to the provisions of this section. Any path of travel shall be considered a ramp if its slope is greater than 1 foot (305 mm) rise in 20 feet (6096 mm) of horizontal run (5% gradient). The least possible slope shall be used for any ramp.*

1133B.5.2 Width. *The width of ramps shall be as required for stairways and exits.*

1133B.5.2.1 Widths as for exits. *The width of ramps shall be as required for stairways and exits. Pedestrian ramps shall have a minimum width of 48 inches (1219 mm).*

1133B.5.2.2 Entrance and special occupancy. *Pedestrian ramps serving entrances to buildings where the ramp is the only exit discharge path and serves an occupant load of 300 or more shall have a minimum clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm). Ramps serving Group R Occupancies may be 36 inches (914 mm) clear width when the occupant load is 50 or less.*

1133B.5.3 Slope. *The maximum slope of a ramp that serves any exit way, provides access for persons with physical disabilities or is in the path of travel shall be 1-foot (305 mm) rise in 12 feet (3658 mm) of horizontal run (8.3% gradient).*

1133B.5.3.1 *The cross slope of ramp surfaces shall be no greater than 1 unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2% slope).*

1133B.5.4 Landings. *Level ramp landings shall be installed as follows:*

1133B.5.4.1 Location of landings. *Level ramp landings shall be provided at the top and bottom of each ramp. Intermediate landings shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) of vertical rise and at each change of direction. Landings are not considered in determining the maximum horizontal distance of each ramp. Landing shall be level as specified in the definition of "level area" in Section 1102B.*

~~NOTE:~~ Examples of ramp dimensions are as follows:

SLOPE	MAXIMUM RISE (Inches)	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL PROJECTION (feet)
	(x 25.4 for mm)	(x 304.8 for mm)
1:12	30	30
1:16	30	40
1:20	30	50
1:15	30	37.5

1133B.5.4.2 Size of top landings. *Top landings shall be not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and shall have a length of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in the direction of ramp run.*

1133B.5.4.3 Encroachment of doors. *Doors in any position shall not reduce the minimum dimension of the landing to less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and shall not reduce the required width by more than 3 inches (76 mm) when fully open.*

1133B.5.4.4 Strike edge extension. *The width of the landing shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of any door or gate for exterior ramps and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior ramps.*

1133B.5.4.5 Landing width. *At bottom and intermediate landings, the width shall be at least the same as required for the ramps.*

1133B.5.4.6 Change of direction. *Intermediate and bottom landings at a change of direction in excess of 30 degrees shall have a dimension in the direction of ramp run of not less than 72 inches (1829 mm) to accommodate the handrail extension.*

1133B.5.4.7 Other intermediate landings. *Other intermediate landings shall have a dimension in the direction of ramp run of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm).*

1133B.5.4.8 *For existing ramps or ramps not covered by Section 1133B.5.4.1, landings shall be provided as set forth in Section 1133B.5.4.1.*

1133B.5.4.9 Hazards. *Required ramps shall have a curb at least 2 inches (51 mm) high, or a wheel guide rail 2 to 4 inches (51 to 102 mm) high on each side of the ramp landing that has a vertical drop exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) and that is not bounded by a wall or fence.*

1133B.5.5 Handrails for ramps.

1133B.5.5.1 *Handrails are required on ramps that provide access if slope exceeds 1 foot (305 mm) rise in 20 feet (6096 mm) of horizontal run (5% gradient), except that at exterior door landings, handrails are not required on ramps less than 6 inches (152 mm) rise or 72 inches (1829 mm) in length. Handrails shall be placed on each side of each ramp, shall be continuous the full length of the ramp, shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the ramp surface, shall extend a minimum of 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the top and bottom of the ramp and the ends shall be returned. Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of not less than 1-½ inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrail. Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. The grip portion shall not be less than ~~1-½~~ 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) nor more than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface and all surfaces shall be smooth with no sharp corners. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3 mm).*

Exceptions:

1. *Handrails at ramps immediately adjacent to fixed seating in assembly areas are not required.*

2. *Ramps that require handrails and that serve one individual dwelling unit in Group R, Division 1 or 3 Occupancies may have one handrail except that such ramps open on one or both sides shall have handrails provided on the open side or sides.*

3. *Curb ramps do not require handrails.*

1133B.5.5.1.1 Ramp handrails. *Where the extension of the handrail in the direction of the ramp run would create a hazard, the extensions on handrails for ramps shall comply with Section 1133B.4.2.4, or the extension on the handrail may be turned 90 degrees to the run of the ramp.*

1133B.5.6 Wheel guides. *Where the ramp surface is not bounded by a wall or fence and the ramp exceeds 10 feet (3048 mm) in length, the ramp shall comply with one of the following requirements.*

1133B.5.6.1 *A guide curb a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) in height shall be provided at each side of the ramp; or*

1133B.5.6.2 *A wheel guide rail shall be provided, centered 3 inches (76 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) above the surface of the ramp.*

1133B.5.7 ***Guards.*** *Ramps more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the adjacent ground shall be provided with ~~guardrails~~ guards ~~as required by this section~~ that comply with Section 1013. Such ~~guardrails~~ guards shall be continuous from the top of the ramp to the bottom of the ramp.*

~~***1133B.5.7.1 Guardrails.*** *Ramps and landings open on one or both sides shall have guardrails as required by this section.*~~

~~***1133B.5.7.2 Where required.*** *Unenclosed floor and roof openings, open and glazed sides of stairways, aisles, landings and ramps, balconies or porches that are more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade or floor below, and roofs used for other than service of the building shall be protected by a guardrail. Guardrails shall be provided at the ends of aisles where they terminate at a fascia of boxes, balconies and galleries.*~~

~~*EXCEPTION: Guardrails need not be provided at the following locations:*~~

~~***1.*** *On the loading side of loading docks.*~~

~~***2.*** *On the auditorium side of a stage, raised platforms and other raised floor areas such as runways, ramps and side stages used for entertainment or presentation. Along the side of an elevated walking surface when used for the normal functioning of special lighting or for access and use of other special equipment. At vertical openings in the performance area of stages.*~~

~~***3.*** *Along vehicle service pits not accessible to the public.*~~

~~***1133B.5.7.3 Height.*** *The top of guardrails shall not be less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height.*~~

~~*EXCEPTIONS:*~~

~~*1. The top of guardrails for Group R, Division 3 and Group U, Division 1 Occupancies and interior guardrails within individual dwelling units, Group R, Division 3 congregate residences and guest rooms of Group R, Division 1 Occupancies may be 36 inches (914 mm) in height.*~~

~~*2. The top guardrails on a balcony immediately in front of the first row of fixed seats and that are not at the end of an aisle may be 26 inches (660 mm) in height.*~~

~~*3. The top of guardrails for stairways, exclusive of their landings, may have a height as specified in Sections 1123A.6.1 and 1133B.4.1.1 for handrails.*~~

~~*Where an elevation change of 30 inches (762 mm) or less occurs between an aisle parallel to the seats (cross aisle) and the adjacent floor or grade below, guardrails not less than 26 inches (660 mm) above the aisle floor shall be provided.*~~

~~*EXCEPTION: Where the backs of seats on the front of the cross aisle project 24 inches (610 mm) or more above the adjacent floor of the aisle, a guardrail need not be provided.*~~

~~*The top of guardrails at the ends of aisles terminating at the fascia of boxes, balconies and galleries shall extend for the width of the aisle and be no closer than 42 inches (1067 mm) to the closest surface of the aisle where there are steps and 36 inches (914 mm) otherwise.*~~

~~*1133B.5.7.4 Openings. Open guardrails shall have intermediate rails or an ornamental pattern such that a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter cannot pass through.*~~

~~*EXCEPTIONS:*~~

~~*1. The open space between the intermediate rails or ornamental pattern of guardrails in areas of commercial and industrial-type occupancies that are not accessible to the public may be such that a sphere 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter cannot pass through.*~~

~~*2. The triangular openings formed by the riser, tread and bottom element of a guardrail at the open side of a stairway may be of such size that a sphere 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter cannot pass through.*~~

~~*For guardrail requirements at grandstands, bleachers or other elevated seating facilities, see Section 1133B.5.7.5.*~~

~~*1133B.5.7.5 Perimeter guardrails. Perimeter guardrails, enclosing walls or fencing shall be provided for all portions of elevated seating facilities that are more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade or the floor. Construction of guardrails shall comply with the requirements of Section 1133B.5.7 and Table 16-B. Guardrails shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) in height measured vertically above the leading edge of the tread adjacent walking surface or adjacent seat boards.*~~

> ~~*EXCEPTION: Guardrails at the front of the front row of seats that are not located at the end of an aisle and where there is no cross aisle may have a height of 26 inches (660 mm) and need not meet the 4 inch maximum (102 mm) spacing specified in Section 1133B.5.7; however, a midrail shall be installed.*~~

~~*The open vertical space between footboards and seats shall not exceed 9 inches (229 mm) when footboards are more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade.*~~

1133B.6 Aisles.

1133B.6.1 General. *Every portion of every building in which are installed seats, tables, merchandise, equipment or similar materials shall be provided with aisles leading to an exit.*

1133B.6.2 Width. *Every aisle shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide if serving only one side, and not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) wide if serving both sides.*

1133B.7 Walks and Sidewalks.

1133B.7.1 Continuous surface. *Walks and sidewalks subject to these regulations shall have a continuous common surface, not interrupted by steps or by abrupt changes in level exceeding 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) (see Section 1133B.7.4), and shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in width. Surfaces shall be slip-resistant as follows:*

1133B.7.1.1 Slopes less than 6 percent. *Surfaces with a slope of less than 6 percent gradient shall be at least as slip-resistant as that described as a medium salted finish.*

1133B.7.1.2 Slopes 6 percent or greater. *Surfaces with a slope of 6 percent gradient shall be slip-resistant.*
1133B.7.1.3 Surface cross slopes. *Surface cross slopes shall not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm) per foot except when the enforcing agency finds that due to local conditions it creates an unreasonable hardship, the cross slope shall be increased to a maximum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) per foot for distances not to exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) (4.16% gradient).*

> ***Exception:*** *When, because of right-of-way restrictions, natural barriers or other existing conditions, the enforcing agency determines that compliance with the 48-inch (1219 mm) clear sidewalk width would create an unreasonable hardship, the clear width may be reduced to 36 inches (914 mm).*

1133B.7.2 Gratings. *Walks, sidewalks and pedestrian ways shall be free of gratings whenever possible. For gratings located in the surface of any of these areas, grid openings in gratings shall be limited to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) in the direction of traffic flow.*

> ***Exceptions:***
> ***1.*** *Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*
>
> ***2.*** *This section shall not apply in those conditions where, due to legal or physical constraints, the site of the project will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

1133B.7.3 Five percent gradient. *When the slope in the direction of travel of any walk exceeds 1 unit vertical to 20 units horizontal (5% gradient), it shall comply with the provisions of Section 1133B.5.*

1133B.7.4 Changes in level. *Abrupt changes in level along any accessible route shall not exceed 1/2 inch (12.7 mm). When changes in level do occur, they shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50%), except that level changes not exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) may be vertical.*

When changes in levels greater than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) are necessary, they shall comply with the requirements for curb ramps. ~~NOTE:~~ See Section 1127B.5.

1133B.7.5 Level areas. *Walks shall be provided with a level area not less than 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) at a door or gate that swings toward the walk, and not less than 48 inches wide by 44 inches (1219 mm by*

1118 mm) deep at a door or gate that swings away from the walk. Such walks shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) to the side of the strike edge of a door or gate that swings toward the walk. (For example, see Figure 11B-26B.)

1133B.7.6 Walks with continuous gradients. *All walks with continuous gradients shall have level areas at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in length at intervals of at least every 400 feet (121 920 mm).*

1133B.8 Hazards.

1133B.8.1 Warning curbs. *Abrupt changes in level, except between a walk or sidewalk and an adjacent street or driveway, exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) in a vertical dimension, such as at planters or fountains located in or adjacent to walks, sidewalks or other pedestrian ways, shall be identified by curbs projecting at least 6 inches (152 mm) in height above the walk or sidewalk surface to warn the blind of a potential drop off.*

When a ~~guardrail~~ guard or handrail is provided, no curb is required when a guide rail is provided centered 3 inches (76 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) above the surface of the walk or sidewalk, the walk is 5 percent or less gradient or no adjacent hazard exists.

1133B.8.2 Overhanging obstructions. *Any obstruction that overhangs a pedestrian's way shall be a minimum of 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface as measured from the bottom of the obstruction. Where a guy support is used parallel to a path of travel, including, but not limited to, sidewalks, a guy brace, sidewalk guy or similar device shall be used to prevent an overhanging obstruction as defined (see Figure 11B-28).*

Hazards such as drop-offs adjacent to walk ways or overhanging obstructions can be dangerous to persons with sight problems. This section addresses these situations.

1133B.8.3 Detectable warnings at transit boarding platforms. *~~(See Section 1127B.5 #8).~~ Transit boarding platforms shall have a detectable warning texture extending the full length of the loading area. This detectable warning texture shall have the following features:*

Width 24 to 36 inches (610 mm to 914 mm) placed at the edge of the drop-off or safe area.

Durable, slip-resistant material having a surface texture composed of raised, truncated domes in a staggered pattern with a diameter of nominal 0.9 inch (22.9 mm) at the base tapering to 0.45 inch (11.4 mm) at the top, a height of nominal 0.2 inch (5.08 mm), and a center-to-center spacing of nominal 2.35 inches (59.7 mm) in compliance with Figure 11B-23A. "Nominal" as used here shall be in accordance with California State Referenced Standards Code Sections 12-11A and B-102. The detectable warning shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces, either light on dark or dark on light. The material used to provide contrast shall be an integral part of the walking surface. Warning surfaces shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound on cane contact. This surface shall be reserved for warning.

Color yellow conforming to Federal Color No. 33538, as shown in Table IV of Standard No. 595B. Where the color value contrast between the yellow warning and the main walking surface is less than 70 percent, a 1 inch-wide (25 mm) black strip shall separate the yellow warning from the main walking surface. Contrast shall be determined by:

> *Contrast = [(B1-B2/B1)] × 100 percent where B1 = light reflectance value (LRV) of the lighter area and B2 = light reflectance value (LRV) of the darker area.*

Only approved DSA-AC detectable warning products and directional surfaces shall be installed as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 1, Articles 2, 3 and 4. Refer to CCR Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-11A and B, for building and facility access specifications for product approval for detectable warning products and directional surfaces.

~~NOTE:~~ Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are for use in residential housing evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.

1133B.8.4 Detectable directional texture at boarding platforms. *At transit boarding platforms, the pedestrian access shall be identified with a detectable directional texture. This detectable directional texture shall comply with Figure 11B-23B and shall be 0.1 inch (2.54 mm) in height that tapers off to 0.04 inch (1.02 mm), with bars raised 0.2 inch (5.08 mm) from the surface. The raised bars shall be 1.3 inches (33.02 mm) wide and 3 inches (76 mm) from*

center-to-center of each bar. This surface shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound on cane contact. The color of the directional texture shall comply with Section 1133B.8.3. This surface will be placed directly behind the yellow detectable warning texture specified in Section 1133B.8.3, aligning with all doors of the transit vehicles, where passengers will embark. The width of the directional texture shall be equal to the width of the transit vehicle's door opening. The depth of the texture shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm).

Only approved DSA-AC detectable warning products and directional surfaces shall be installed as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 1, Articles 2, 3 and 4. Refer to CCR Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-11A and B, for building and facility access specifications for product approval for detectable warning products and directional surfaces.

~~NOTE:~~ Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are for use in residential housing evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.

1133B.8.5 Detectable warnings at hazardous vehicular areas. *If a walk crosses or adjoins a vehicular way, and the walking surfaces are not separated by curbs, railings or other elements between the pedestrian areas and vehicular areas, the boundary between the areas shall be defined by a continuous detectable warning which is 36 inches (914 mm) wide, complying with Sections 1133B.8.3 through 1133B.8.5.*

Only approved DSA-AC detectable warning products and directional surfaces shall be installed as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 1, Articles 2, 3 and 4. Refer to CCR Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-11A and B, for building and facility access specifications for product approval for detectable warning products and directional surfaces.

~~NOTE:~~ Detectable warning products and directional surfaces installed after January 1, 2001, shall be evaluated by an independent entity, selected by the Department of General Services, Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for all occupancies, including transportation and other outdoor environments, except that when products and surfaces are for use in residential housing evaluation shall be in consultation with the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Government Code Section 4460.

1133B.8.6 Protruding objects.

1133B.8.6.1 General. *Objects projecting from walls (for example, telephones) with their leading edges between 27 inches (686 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finished floor shall protrude no more than 4 inches (102 mm) into walks, halls, corridors, passageways or aisles. Objects mounted with their leading edges at or below 27 inches (686 mm) above the finished floor may protrude any amount. Free-standing objects mounted on posts or pylons may overhang 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from 27 inches (686 mm) to 80 inches (2032 mm) above the ground or finished floor. Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width of an accessible route or maneuvering space. See Figure 11B-7A.*

1133B.8.6.2 Head room. *Walks, halls, corridors, passageways, aisles or other circulation spaces shall have 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum clear head room. See Figure 11B-7A.*

1133B.8.6.3 Free-standing signs. *Wherever signs mounted on posts or pylons protrude from the posts or pylons and the bottom edge of the sign is at less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finished floor or ground level, the edges of such signs shall be rounded or eased and the corners shall have a minimum radius of 0.125 inches.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

Division IV – ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS

~~*Note:*~~ *This division replaces Appendix Chapter 11, Division II, for use in California.*

SECTION 1134B
ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS

1134B.1 Scope. *The provisions of this division apply to renovation, structural repair, alteration and additions to existing buildings, including those identified as historic buildings. This division identifies minimum standards for removing architectural barriers, and providing and maintaining accessibility to existing buildings and their related facilities.*

1134B.2 General. *All existing buildings and facilities, when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such buildings or facilities, shall comply with all provisions of Division I, New Buildings, except as modified by this division. These requirements shall apply only to the area of specific alteration, structural repair or addition and shall include those areas listed below:*

1134B.2.1 *A primary entrance to the building or facility and the primary path of travel to the specific area of alteration, structural repair or addition, and sanitary facilities, drinking fountains, signs and public telephones serving the area.*

Exceptions:

1. *When the total construction cost of alterations, structural repairs or additions does not exceed a valuation threshold of $50,000, based on January 1981, "ENR US20 Cities" Average construction cost index of 3372.02 (Engineering News Record, McGraw Hill Publishing Company), and the enforcing agency finds that compliance with this code creates an unreasonable hardship, compliance shall be limited to the actual work of the project. The enforcing agency shall annually update the valuation threshold to a current amount based on the increase in the index since the last figure used. (For example, the January ~~2000~~ 2006 amount is ~~$90.895.07~~ $113,586.07.) For purposes of this exception, an unreasonable hardship exists where the cost of providing an accessible entrance, path of travel, sanitary facilities, public phones and drinking fountains, is disproportionate to the cost of the project; that is, where it exceeds 20 percent of the cost of the project without these features. Where the cost of alterations necessary to make these features fully accessible is disproportionate, access shall be provided to the extent that it can be without incurring disproportionate cost. In choosing which accessible elements to provide, priority should be given to those elements that will provide the greatest access in the following order:*

1.1 *An accessible entrance,*

1.2 *An accessible route to the altered area,*

1.3 *At least one accessible restroom for each sex,*

1.4 *Accessible telephones,*

1.5 *Accessible drinking fountains, and*

1.6 *When possible, additional accessible elements such as parking, storage and alarms.*

The obligation to provide access may not be evaded by performing a series of small alterations to the area served by a single path of travel if those alterations could have been performed as a single undertaking. If an area has been altered without providing an accessible path of travel to that area, and subsequent alterations of that area or a different area on the same path of travel are undertaken within three years of the original alteration, the total cost of alterations to the areas on that path of travel during the preceding three-year period shall be considered in determining whether the cost of making that path of travel accessible is disproportionate. Only alterations undertaken after January 26, 1992, shall be considered in determining if the cost of providing an accessible path of travel is disproportionate to the overall cost of the alterations.

2. *Certain types of privately funded, multistory buildings and facilities were formerly exempt from accessibility requirements above and below the first floor under this code, but as of the effective date of this regulation are no longer exempt due to more restrictive provisions in the federal Americans with Disabilities Act. In alteration projects involving buildings and facilities previously approved and built without elevators, areas above and below the ground floor are subject to the 20 percent disproportionality provisions described in Exception 1, above, even if the value of the project exceeds the valuation threshold in Exception 1. The types of buildings and facilities are:*

2.1 *Office buildings and passenger vehicle service stations of three stories or more and 3,000 or more square feet (279m2) per floor.*

2.2 *Offices of physicians and surgeons.*

2.3 *Shopping centers.*

2.4 *Other buildings and facilities three stories or more and more than 3,000 square feet (279 m2) per floor if a reasonable portion of services sought and used by the public is available on the accessible level.*

~~NOTE:~~ For the general privately funded multistory building exception applicable to new construction and alterations, see Section 1103B.1, Exception ~~3~~ 2.

3. *Alterations, structural repairs or additions consisting of one or more of the following shall be limited to the actual work of the project:*

3.1 *Altering one building entrance to meet accessibility requirements.*

3.2 *Altering one existing toilet facility to meet accessibility requirements.*

3.3 *Altering existing elevators to meet accessibility requirements.*

3.4 *Altering existing steps to meet accessibility requirements.*

3.5 *Altering existing handrails to meet accessibility requirements.*

3.6 *Alteration solely for the purpose of removing barriers undertaken pursuant to the requirements of Sections 36.402 and 36.404 through 36.406 of Title III of the Department of Justice regulations promulgated pursuant to the Americans with Disabilities Act (Public Law 101-336, 28 C.F.R. Section 36.402, 28 C.F.R. Section 36.404, 28 C.F.R. Section 36.405, and 28 C.F.R. 36.406) or the accessibility requirements of this code as those requirements or regulations now exist or are hereafter amended, including the following:*

3.6.1 *Installing ramps*

3.6.2 *Making curb cuts in sidewalks and entrance*

3.6.3 *Repositioning shelves*

3.6.4 *Rearranging tables, chairs, vending machines, display racks, and other Furniture*

3.6.5 *Repositioning telephones*

3.6.6 *Adding raised markings on elevator control buttons*

3.6.7 *Installing flashing alarm lights*

3.6.8 *Widening doors*

3.6.9 *Installing offset hinges to widen doorways*

3.6.10 *Eliminating a turnstile or providing an alternative accessible path*

3.6.11 *Installing accessible door hardware*

3.6.12 *Installing grab bars in toilet stalls*

3.6.13 *Rearranging toilet partitions to increase maneuvering space*

3.6.14 *Insulating lavatory pipes under sinks to prevent burns*

3.6.15 *Installing a raised toilet seat*

3.6.16 *Installing a full-length bathroom mirror*

3.6.17 *Repositioning the paper towel dispenser in a bathroom*

3.6.18 *Creating designated accessible parking spaces*

3.6.19 *Installing an accessible paper cup dispenser at an existing inaccessible water fountain*

3.6.20 *Removing high-pile, low-density carpeting*

3.6.21 *Installing vehicle hand controls.*

3.7 *Altering existing parking lots by resurfacing and/or restriping.*

4. *Projects which consist only of heating, ventilation, air conditioning, reroofing, electrical work not involving placement of switches and receptacles, cosmetic work that does not affect items regulated by this code, such as painting, equipment not considered to be a part of the architecture of the building or area, such as computer terminals, office equipment, etc., are not considered alteration projects for the purposes of accessibility for persons with disabilities and shall not be subject to this code. For the purposes of this section, the term "construction cost" does not include building permit fees or discretionary permit fees.*

~~NOTE:~~ The only purpose of this exception is to exclude projects from activating the provisions of this section. The exceptions are not intended to relieve projects from complying with other applicable provisions of this code (e.g., replacement of carpet does not activate the provisions of this section; however, it still must comply with Section 1124B.3).

1134B.2.2 *Where it is technically infeasible in the area of an alteration to make existing ~~restroom~~ toilet facilities code compliant and to install separate ~~sanitary~~ toilet facilities for each sex, then the installation of at least one unisex toilet~~/bathroom~~ facility per floor being altered, located in the same area as existing toilet facilities, will be permitted. Such a facility shall meet the requirements of Section 1115B.7.2.*

1134B.3 General Accessibility for Entrances, Exits and Paths of Travel.

1134B.3.1 Automatic doors. *When an automatic door operator is utilized to operate a pair of doors, at least one of the doors shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

Exceptions:

1. *In existing buildings the following shall apply:*

1.1 *Where the occupant load is less than 10, except Group I, Division 1 Occupancies, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.*

1.2 *Where occupant load is greater than 10 and it is determined that compliance with Section 1132A.2.1would create an unreasonable hardship, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.*

2. *In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See ~~Section 101.17.11, Item 5~~ Section 109.1.5.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1135B
HISTORIC PRESERVATION – SPECIAL STANDARDS OF ACCESSIBILITY
FOR BUILDINGS WITH HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

1135B.1 General. *Qualified historical buildings shall comply with the State Historical Building Code, Part 8, Title 24, of the California Code of Regulations as printed in Part 2, Chapter 34, Division II.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 11C
STANDARDS FOR CARD READERS AT
GASOLINE FUEL DISPENSING FACILITIES

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire California chapter	**X**
Adopt only those sections listed below	

Chapter 11C ~~[For DSA-AC]~~
STANDARDS FOR CARD READERS AT
GASOLINE FUEL DISPENSING FACILITIES

SECTION 1101C
CARD-READER DEVICES AT FUEL DISPENSING EQUIPMENT

1101C.1 General. *Notwithstanding other requirements in the California Building Code (CBC), only the requirements and additional definitions in this section shall apply to card-reading devices in motor vehicle fuel facilities, except that administrative requirements which are found in Chapter 1 still apply.*
For purposes of this section, the following additional definitions shall apply:

ACCESSIBLE. *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.1-A ~~1102A.1-A~~ and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT. *~~See Chapter 2, Section 202-A.~~ See Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

ALTERNATE CARD READER *shall be defined in this section as functionally equal card reader and control directly attached to or an integral part of the fuel dispenser in addition to the primary card reader which is in integral part of the dispenser.*

FREE-STANDING PEDESTAL *is a card-reading device which controls one or more remote fuel dispensers that have no card reader as an integral part of the fuel dispenser.*

GRADE (Adjacent Ground Elevation). *See Chapter 2, Section 202 ~~208-G~~.*

INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY. *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.9-I ~~1102A.9-I~~ and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

LEVEL ACCESSIBLE AREA, *for the purposes of this section, shall mean a slope of not more than 2 percent in front of the dispensing device; however, the slope may extend to 5 percent where the enforcing authority determines that, due to unusual site conditions, the 2 percent gradient is not obtainable.*

LEVEL AREA. *See Chapter 11A, Section 1107A.12-L ~~1102A.12-L~~ and Chapter 11B, Section 1102B.*

PATH OF TRAVEL *shall include the clearance requirements stated in Chapter 11B for Wheelchair Passage Width, and Relationship of Maneuvering Clearances to Wheelchair Spaces, except that pump nozzles and hoses may overlap required clearances.*

RECOMMEND. *See Chapter 2, Section 202 ~~-219-R~~.*

TYPE OF MOTOR FUEL *shall mean gasoline, diesel, compressed natural gas, methanol, electricity or ethanol.*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1102C
APPLICATION

This section shall apply to equipment located at the following facilities:

1. *New motor vehicle fuel facilities.*

2. *Existing motor vehicle fuel facilities built before the effective date of this section when:*

2.1 *Remodeling or reconstruction includes removal and replacement of one or more islands and associated piping and tank(s); or*

2.2 *Remodeling includes reconstruction or removal and replacement of fuel islands at facilities that provide free-standing pedestal card readers.*

SECTION 1103C
NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CARD-READING DEVICES REQUIRED

Where only one card-reading device is installed for use with any type of motor fuel, it shall meet the required features of this section. When more than one card-reading location is available for a specific type of motor fuel, a minimum of two for that type shall have the accessible features of this section.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1104C
REQUIRED FEATURES

Card-reading devices at motor vehicle fuel facilities shall be accessible by complying with only the following:

1. *The highest operable part of each primary or alternate card reader shall be no more than 54 inches (1372 mm) measured from the base of the fuel dispenser. Where card readers are located on free-standing pedestals, the card-reading control function shall be no more than 54 inches (1372 mm) above an accessible level area which is served by an accessible path of travel.*

Exception: *If an enforcing agency requires that fuel dispensers or card-reading devices be placed in a manner where the card-reading device exceeds the requirements described herein, the provisions of Section 1104C do not apply. Any enforcing agency having jurisdiction over retail fueling facilities may not require islands or impose other regulations which conflict with this section, unless the agency documents and justifies the specific necessity for such a rule or ordinance and complies with the requirements of Health and Safety Code Section 18941.*

2. *An accessible path of travel shall be provided to the base of all fuel dispensers required to meet the provisions of this section. Such fuel dispensers shall be mounted on the accessible level area.*

3. *An accessible level area shall be provided which is minimally 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) level and clear. This area shall be provided within 10 inches (254 mm) in plan view of the face of the controls and shall be unobstructed by any features, except pump nozzles and hoses, with the long side of this space parallel to and centered [plus or minus 9 inches (229 mm)] with the face of the card-reader controls. (See Figures 11C-1 and 11C-2.)*

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 1105C
PROTECTION OF DISPENSERS MOUNTED AT GRADE

Dispensers mounted at grade shall be protected from vehicular damage as required by ~~Section 5201.5.1,~~ Part 9, Title 24 (California Fire Code).

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

FIGURE 11C-1.CARD READERS MOUNTED IN FUEL DISPENSERS
FIGURE 11C-2.CARD READERS LOCATED ON FREE-STANDING PEDESTALS

CHAPTER 16
STRUCTURAL DESIGN

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
1607.7.2 CA	**X**

SECTION 1607
LIVE LOADS

1607.7 Loads on handrails, guards, grab bars and vehicle barriers. Handrails, guards, grab bars ~~as designed in ICC A117.1~~ and vehicle barriers shall be designed and constructed to the structural loading conditions set forth in this section.

1607.7.2 Grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats. Grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seat systems shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 250 pounds (1.11 kN) applied in any direction at any point. *[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1127A.4 and Chapter 11B Sections 1110B.1.7 and 1115B.8.3 for grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats, as applicable.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

[~~For DSA-AC~~]
CHAPTER 24
GLASS AND GLAZING

(Relocated from 2001 CBC Ch 24)
~~*[For DSA-AC] NOTE: Chapter 24 is adopted by reference in Table 1109A.2-1 and 1109A.2-2. The codes, standards and publications adopted and set forth in adopting Chapter 24, including other codes, standards and publications referred to therein are, by title and date of publication, hereby adopted as standard reference documents of this code. See Section 101.7.*~~

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
2406 IBC	**X**

1. This state agency adopts the entire chapter except for those sections indicated by the following symbol.

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 27
ELECTRICAL

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AUTHORITY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
2702.2.5 IBC	**X**
2702.2.6 IBC	**X**

CHAPTER 2701
GENERAL

2701.1 Scope. This chapter governs the electrical components, equipment and systems used in buildings and structures covered by this code. Electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of the ~~ICC~~ *California* Electrical Code.

2702.2.5 Accessible means of egress elevators. Standby power shall be provided for elevators that are part of an accessible means of egress in accordance with Section 1007.4.

2702.2.6 Accessible means of egress platform lifts. Standby power in accordance with this section or ASME A18.1 shall be provided for platform lifts that are part of an accessible means of egress in accordance with Section 1007.5

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 29
PLUMBING SYSTEMS

~~Note: This Chapter is not adopted by DSA-AC, see Chapter 11B, 1115B.2~~

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	

SECTION 2901
GENERAL

2901.1 Scope. The provisions of t~~his chapter and~~ the ~~International~~ *California* Plumbing Code shall govern the erection, installation, alteration, repairs, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing equipment and systems. Plumbing systems and equipment shall be constructed, installed and maintained in accordance with the ~~International~~ *California* Plumbing Code. Private sewage disposal systems shall conform to the ~~International Private Sewage Disposal~~ *California Plumbing* Code.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 2902
MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES

2902.1.1 Unisex toilet and bath fixtures. Fixtures located within unisex toilet bathing rooms complying with ~~Section 404 of~~ *this code and* the ~~*International*~~ *California Plumbing Code* are permitted to be included in determining the minimum required number of fixtures for assembly and mercantile occupancies. [P]

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 30
ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
3001.1 w/Exception CA	**X**
3001.3 CA	**X**

SECTION 3001
GENERAL

3001.1 Scope. This chapter governs the design, construction, installation, alteration and repair of elevators and conveying systems and their components.

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 3001) ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~

***Exception**: [DSA-AC] For accessibility requirements for special access lifts and elevators, see California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 7, Article 7-15, Sections 7-3093 through 7-3094.5 and Part 2, Sections 1124A and 1116B.*

3001.2 Referenced standards. …
(Relocated from 2001 CBC 3001.1 and deleted
~~*3003.1 [For DSA-AC] Referenced Standards. For elevators and special access lifts in covered multi-family dwellings see Chapter 11A, Section 1110A. For accessibility requirements for elevators and special access (wheelchair) lifts in public accommodations, commercial buildings, and publicly funded, owned or leased housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.*~~

3001.3 Accessibility. Passenger elevators *and special access lifts* required to be accessible by Chapters 11*A or 11B* shall conform to ~~ICC A117.1~~ *Chapter 11A for applications listed in Section 110.2.1.2 regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development or Chapter 11B for applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance.*

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 3003 and repealed)
~~3003 SPECIAL PROVISIONS~~
~~3003.4 Size of Cab and Control Locations.~~

~~3003.4.1 General. In buildings three or more stories in height served by an elevator …~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for size of cab and control locations in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.3 and for public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings, and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.1.*~~

~~3003.4.2 Operation and leveling.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for operation and leveling in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1110A.1.3 1124A.10. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.2.*~~

~~3003.4.4 Door size.~~

~~*EXCEPTION: 2. [For DSA-AC] For accessibility requirements for door size in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.4.*~~

~~3003.4.5 Door protective and reopening device.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for door protective and reopening device in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.9. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings, and publicly funded housing, se Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.5.*~~

~~3003.4.6 Door delay (passenger service time).~~
~~3003.4.6.1 Hall call. The minimum acceptable time from notification …~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility for hall call in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.7.1. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.6.*~~

~~3003.4.6.2 Car call.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for car call in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.7.2. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.7.*~~

~~3003.4.7 Car inside.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for car inside in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.*~~

~~3003.4.8 Car controls.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for car controls in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.3.3. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.9.*~~

~~3003.4.9 Car position indicator and signal.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for car position indicator and signal in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.10.*~~

~~3003.4.12 Handrails~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for handrails in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.11.*~~

~~3003.4.13. Minimum illumination.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for minimum illumination at car controls in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.5. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.12.*~~

~~3003.4. 14 Hall buttons.~~
~~*5[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for hall call button center line in public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.13*~~

~~3003.4.15 Hall lantern.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for hall lantern in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.6. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.14.*~~

~~3003.4.16 Doorjamb marking.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for doorjamb marking in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.8. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.15.*~~

~~3003.4.17 Location.~~
~~*[For DSA-AC] EXCEPTION: For accessibility requirements for location of passenger elevators in accessible housing, see Chapter 11A, Section 1124A.2. For public buildings, public accommodations, commercial buildings and publicly funded housing, see Chapter 11B, Section 1116B.1.16.*~~

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.

Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 31
SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
3104.2 Exception #2 only CA	**X**

SECTION 3104
PEDESTRIAN WALKWAYS AND TUNNELS

3104.2 Separate structures. Connected buildings shall be considered to be separate structures.

Exceptions:
1. . . .
2. For purposes of *accessibility* ~~calculating the number of Type B units required by Chapter 11~~ *as required by Chapter 11A*, structurally connected buildings*, buildings connected by stairs, walkways, or roofs,* and buildings with multiple wings shall be considered one structure.

Authority Cited – GC§ 4450.
Reference – GC §§ 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and H&SC§§ 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 31B
PUBLIC SWIMMING POOLS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	**X**
3113B.1 w/Exception #4 only CA	**X**

(Relocated from 2001 CBC 3113B)

SECTION 3113B
POOL DECKS

3113B.1 General. *A minimum continuous and unobstructed 4-foot-wide (1219 mm) slip-resistant nonabrasive deck area of concrete or like material shall be provided flush with the top of the pool shell wall extending completely around the pool and the deck area shall further extend 4 feet (1219 mm) on both sides and rear width shall be measured from the poolside edge of the coping lip.*

Exceptions:

1. *A deck at least 4 feet (1219 mm) in width shall extend around 50 percent or more of the perimeter of a spa pool. For spa pools that have their walls extending above the ground or floor level, the deck area requirement shall apply at the ground or floor level unless otherwise specified by the enforcing agency.*

2. *The deck width separating a spa pool from an adjacent pool shall not be less than 6 feet (1829 mm) wide.*

3. *The deck may be omitted from around a temporary training pool.*

4. ~~*[For DSA-AC]*~~ *Any mechanism provided to assist persons with disabilities in gaining entry into the pool and in exiting from the pool*~~*. All mechanisms shall comply with 1104B.4.3. Refer to*~~ *shall comply with Chapter 11B, Section 1104B.4.3 Participation areas.*

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.

Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 33
SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

ENFORCING ATUHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	

SECTION 3306
PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

3306.2 Walkways. A walkway shall be provided for pedestrian travel in front of every construction and demolition site unless the authority having jurisdiction authorizes the sidewalk to be fenced or closed. Walkways shall be of sufficient width to accommodate the pedestrian traffic, but in no case shall they be less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Walkways shall be provided with a durable walking surface. Walkways shall be accessible in accordance with ~~Chapter 11~~ *Chapters 11A or 11B* and shall be designed to support all imposed loads and in no case shall the design live load be less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) (7.2 kN/m^2).

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 34
EXISTING STRUCTURES

ENFORCING AUTHORITY	Local Building Official
ADOPTING AGENCY	**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments	
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below	
Adopt only those sections listed below	
3401.1 (last ¶ only) CA	**X**
3407 (1s ¶) CA	**X**

SECTION 3401
GENERAL

3401.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy of existing structures.

> **Exception:** Existing bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating shall comply with ICC 300-02.

Relocated from 2001 CBC 3401 Note)
~~[For DSA-AC]~~ ~~Note:~~ For applications listed in Section 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance for ~~For~~ accessibility requirements see Chapter 11B, Section 1134B.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

SECTION 3407
HISTORIC BUILDINGS

(Relocated from 2001 CBC Chapter 34, Division II) [~~**For DSA-AC] STATE HISTORICAL BUILDING CODE**~~

For applications listed in 109.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance for Qualified Historical Buildings, see California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 8 (California Historical Building Code) or as reprinted in this section.

Authority Cited – Government Code Section 4450.
Reference – Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

CHAPTER 35
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ENFORCING AUTHORITY		**Local Building Official**
ADOPTING AGENCY		**DSA-AC**
Adopt entire chapter without amendments		
Adopt entire chapter with amendments listed below		
Adopt only those sections listed below		**X**
ANSI S3.41-96	CA	**X**
ANSI Z97.1-84	CA	**X**
ASME A17.1-04	CA	**X**
ASME A18.1-03	CA	**X**
BHMA A156.10-99	CA	**X**
BHMA A156.19-02	CA	**X**
CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 (1977)	IBC	**X**
NFPA 72-02 (5.12.4, 7.4.1.2, 7.4.3.1)	CA	**X**

~~SECTION 3504~~
~~GENERAL~~

~~3504.1.3 [For SFM] National Standards.~~

~~1. NFPA 11, 1998 Edition, Low-Expansion Foams.~~
~~2. NFPA 11A, 1999 Edition, Medium- and High-Expansion Foam Systems.~~
~~3. NFPA 12, 1998 Edition, Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems.~~
~~4. NFPA 12A, 1997 Edition, Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems.~~
~~5. NFPA 13, 1999 Edition, The Installation of Automatic Sprinkler Systems, as amended.~~
~~6. NFPA 13D, 1999 Edition, Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One-and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes.~~
~~7. NFPA 13R, 1999 Edition, Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height.~~
~~8. NFPA 14, 2000 Edition, Installation of Standpipe, Private Hydrant and Hose Systems.~~
~~9. NFPA 15, 1996 Edition, Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection.~~
~~10. NFPA 16, 1999 Edition, Installation of Deluge, Foam-Water Sprinkler and Foam-Water Spray Systems.~~
~~11. NFPA 17, 1998 Edition, Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems.~~
~~12. NFPA 17A, 1998 Edition, Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems.~~
~~13. NFPA 20, 1999 Edition, Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection.~~
~~14. NFPA 22, 1998 Edition, Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection.~~
~~15. NFPA 24, 1995 Edition, Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances.~~
~~16. NFPA 37, 1998 Edition, Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines.~~
~~17. NFPA 50, 1996 Edition, Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites.~~
~~18. NFPA 54, 1996 Edition, National Fuel Gas Code.~~
~~19. NFPA 58, 1998 Edition, Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases.~~
~~20. NFPA 72, 1999 Edition, National Fire Alarm Code, as amended. [The SFM does not adopt NFPA 72~~ r*~~, 1999 Edition, Chapter 8.]~~*
~~20.1 NFPA 72~~ r*~~, 1999 Edition, National Fire Alarm, as amended, .Household Fire Warning Equipment.~~*

~~21. NFPA 92 A, 2000 Edition, Smoke-Control Systems.~~
~~22. NFPA 99, 1999 Edition, Health Care Facilities, Chapter 4, Gas and Vacuum Systems.~~
~~23. NFPA 99 C, 1999 Edition, Gas and Vacuum Systems.~~
~~24. NFPA 253, 2000 Edition, Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source.~~
~~25. NFPA 2001, 2000 Edition, Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems.~~
~~26. UL13, Power-limited Circuit Cables, Second Edition, 1996.~~
~~27. UL 38, Manually Actuated Signaling Boxes, Seventh Edition, March 26, 1999, with revisions through April 28, 2000.~~
~~28. UL 193, Alarm Valves for Fire Protection Service, Ninth Edition, March 24, 1993.~~
~~29. UL 217, Single- and Multiple-Station Smoke Alarm, as amended, Fifth Edition, 1997.~~
~~30. UL 228, Door Closers/Holders, with or without Integral Smoke Alarms, Fourth Edition, April 29, 1997, with revisions through January 21, 1999.~~
~~31. UL 260, Dry Pipe and Deluge Valves for Fire Protection Service, Sixth Edition, May 27, 1994, with revisions through February 15, 1999.~~
~~32. UL 262, Gate Valves for Fire Protection Service, Seventh Edition, May 27, 1994, with revisions through January 28, 1998.~~
~~33. UL 268, Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, as amended, Fourth Edition, December 30, 1996, with revisions through January 4, 1999.~~
~~34. UL 268A, Smoke Detectors for Duct Application, as amended, Third Edition, May 15, 1998.~~
~~35. UL 312, Check Valves for Fire-Protection Service, Eighth Edition, June 2, 1993, with revisions through February 17, 1994.~~
~~36. UL 346, Waterflow Indicators for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, Fourth Edition, 1994.~~
~~37. UL 464, Audible Signal Appliances, Seventh Edition, February 23, 1996, with revisions through May 11, 1999.~~
~~38. UL 497B, Protectors for Data Communication and Fire Alarm Circuits, Second Edition, December 28, 1993, with revisions through October 20, 1994.~~
~~39. UL 521, Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, Seventh Edition, February 19, 1999.~~
~~40. UL 539, Single- and Multiple-Station Heat Detectors, Fourth Edition, 1995.~~
~~41. UL 632, Electrically Actuated Transmitters, Sixth Edition, 1994.~~
~~42. UL 753, Alarm Accessories for Automatic Water Supply Valves for Fire Protection Service, Sixth Edition, 1994.~~
~~43. UL 813, Commercial Audio Equipment, Seventh Edition, December 13, 1996, with revisions through March 30, 1999.~~
~~44. UL 864, Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, as amended, Eighth Edition, November 27, 1996, with revisions through March 30, 1999.~~
~~45. UL 884, Underfloor Electric Raceways and Fittings, Eighth Edition, 1987, Tenth Edition, 1998.~~
~~46. UL 913, Intrinsically Safe Apparatus for Use in Class I, II, and III, Division 1, Hazardous Locations, Fifth Edition, February 21, 1997, with revisions dated February 24, 1997.~~
~~47. UL 924, Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment, Eighth Edition, 1999.~~
~~48. UL 985, Household Fire Warning System Units, as amended, Fifth Edition, May 26, 2000.~~
~~49. UL 1091, Butterfly Valves for Fire Protection Service, Fifth Edition, 1994.~~
~~50. UL 1424, Cables for Power-limited Fire Protective Signaling Circuits, Second Edition, 1996.~~
~~51. UL 1480, Speakers for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, Fourth Edition, July 28, 1998.~~
~~52. UL 1481, Power Supplies for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, Fourth Edition, April 9, 1999.~~
~~53. UL 1711, Amplifiers for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, First Edition, January 5, 1987, with revisions through October 12, 1992.~~
~~54. UL 1730, Smoke Detector Monitors and Accessories (annunciators) for Individual Living Units of Multifamily Residences and Hotel/Motel Rooms, Third Edition, September 18, 1998, with revisions through May 17, 1999.~~
~~55. UL 1971, Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired, Second Edition, October 17, 1995, with revisions through May 24, 2000.~~
~~56. UL 1484, Residential Gas Detectors, Third Edition, November 30, 1994, with revisions dated December 1, 1994.~~
~~57. UL 1994, Low Level Path Marking and Lighting Systems, Sixth Edition, 1994.~~
~~58. UL 2034, Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms, Second Edition, October 29, 1996, with revisions through June 2, 1999.~~
~~59 UL 2079, Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems, Third Edition, July 31, 1998.~~
~~60. FM Class No. 3260, Flame Radiation Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling, February 1994 Edition.~~

~~3504.2 [For DSA-AC] Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance Standards~~

~~3504.2.1 American National Standards Institute (ANSI) 17.1-86.~~

~~NOTES:~~ *~~1. DSA-AC adopts ANSI 17.1-86 by reference for the specific scope of application for which DSA-AC is responsible for enforcement, and the specific statutory authority of DSA-AC to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards per 101.17.11.~~*

~~2. The Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance Standards referencing ANSI 17.1-86 are also referenced in Title 24, Part 12.~~

~~3504.2.2 American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME 17.1-90).~~

~~NOTES:~~ *~~1. DSA-AC adopts ASME 17.1-90 by reference for the specific scope of application for which DSA-AC is responsible for enforcement, and the specific statutory authority of DSA-AC to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards per 101.17.11.~~*

~~2. The Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance Standards referencing ASME 17.1-90 are also referenced in Title 24, Part 12.~~

~~SECTION 3505~~
~~AMENDMENTS TO NATIONAL STANDARDS~~

~~3505.1 [For DSA-AC, SFM] NFPA 72, 1999 Edition as amended.~~

~~Add a definition of "central control station" as follows:~~

~~CENTRAL CONTROL STATION~~ *~~is a central control station for fire department operations as referred to in the California Building Code and California Fire Code. (See also FIRE COMMAND CENTER.)~~*

~~Amend Section 1.5.5.4 4.4.4.4 as follows:~~

~~Sec. 1.5.5.4 4.4.4.4 Wiring.~~

~~The installation of all wiring, cable and equipment shall be in accordance with the California Electrical Code, and specifically with Article 760, Article 770 and Article 800, where applicable. Optical Fiber Cables shall be protected against mechanical injury in accordance with Article 760.~~

~~2-1 Introduction.~~

~~2-1.1* Scope.~~ *~~This chapter contains minimum requirements for the selection, installation, operation and maintenance of fire warning equipment for use within family living units. The requirements of the other chapters shall not apply.~~*

~~EXCEPTION:~~ *~~Where specifically indicated.~~*

~~2-1.2 Purpose.~~

~~2-1.2.1~~ *~~Household fire warning systems shall be designed and installed to provide sufficient warning of a fire to enable occupants to escape. It is recognized that household fire warning systems might not be of material assistance to all occupants, such as persons intimate with the ignition of a fire.~~*

~~2-1.2.2~~ *~~This chapter is primarily concerned with life safety, not with protection of property. It presumes that a family has an exit plan.~~*

~~2-1.3 General.~~

~~2-1.3.1~~ *~~A control and associated equipment, a multiple of single station alarm(s), or any combination thereof shall be permitted to be used as a household fire warning system, provided the requirements of 2-1.3.7 are met.~~*

~~2-1.3.2~~ *~~Detection and alarm systems for use within the protected household are covered by this chapter.~~*

~~***2-1.3.3*** *Supplementary functions, including the extension of an alarm beyond the household, shall be permitted and shall not interfere with the performance requirements of this chapter.*~~

~~***2-1.3.4*** *Where the authority having jurisdiction requires a household fire warning system to comply with the requirements of Chapter 4 or any other chapters of this code, the requirements of Section 2-2 shall still apply.*~~

~~***2-1.3.5*** *The definitions of Section 1-4 shall apply.*~~

~~***2-1.3.6*** *This chapter does not exclude the use of fire alarm systems complying with other chapters of this code in household applications, provided all of the requirements of this chapter are met or exceeded.*~~

~~***2-1.3.7*** *All devices, combinations of devices and equipment to be installed in conformity with this chapter shall be approved or listed for the purposes for which they are intended.*~~

~~***2-1.3.8*** *A device or system of devices having materials or forms that differ from those detailed in this chapter shall be permitted to be examined and tested according to the intent of the chapter and, if found equivalent, shall be permitted to be approved.*~~

~~***2-1.3.9 Equivalency.*** *Nothing in this code is intended to prevent the use of systems, methods, or devices of equivalent or superior quality, strength, fire resistance, effectiveness, durability and safety over those prescribed by this code, provided technical documentation is submitted to the authority having jurisdiction to demonstrate equivalency and the system, method or device is approved for the intended purpose.*~~

~~***2-2 Basic Requirements.***~~

~~***2-2.1 Required Protection.***~~

~~***2-2.1.1**** *This code requires the following detectors within the family living unit.*~~

~~***2-2.1.1.1*** *Smoke alarms shall be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms and on each additional story of the family living unit, including basements and excluding crawl spaces and unfinished attics. In new construction, a smoke alarm also shall be installed in each sleeping room.*~~

~~***2-2.1.1.2**** *For family living units with one or more split levels (i.e., adjacent levels with less than one full story separation between levels), a smoke alarm required by 2-2.1.1.1 shall be permitted for an adjacent lower level, including basements. (See Figure A-2-2.1.1.2.)*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Where there is an intervening door between one level and the adjacent level, a smoke alarm shall be installed on the lower level.*~~

~~***2-2.1.1.3*** *Automatic sprinkler systems provided in accordance with NFPA 13D, Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes, or*~~
~~*NFPA 13R, Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height, shall be interconnected to sound alarm notification appliances throughout the dwelling where a fire warning system is provided.*~~

~~***2-2.2* Alarm Notification Appliances.*** *Each automatic alarm-initiating device shall cause the operation of an alarm that shall be clearly audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. The tests of audibility level shall be conducted with all household equipment that might be in operation at night in full operation.*~~

~~*Examples of such equipment are window air conditioners and room humidifiers. (See A-2-2.2 for additional information.*~~

~~***2-2.2.1*** *In new construction, where more than one smoke alarm is required by 2-2.1, smoke alarm shall be arranged so that operation of any smoke alarm causes all smoke alarms within the dwelling to sound.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Configurations that provide equivalent distribution of the alarm signal.*~~

~~***2-2.2.2* Standard Signal.*** *Newly installed alarm notification appliances used with a household fire warning system and single and multiple station smoke alarms shall produce the audible emergency evacuation signal described in ANSI S3.41, Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal. Signals from different notification appliances shall not be required to be synchronized.*~~

~~***2-2.3 Alarm Notification Appliances for the Hearing Impaired.***~~
~~*In a household occupied by one or more hearing impaired persons, each initiating device shall cause the operation of a visible alarm signal(s) in accordance with 2-4.4.2. Since hearing deficits are often not apparent, the responsibility for advising the appropriate persons shall be that of the hearing impaired party. The responsibility for compliance shall be that of the occupants of the family living unit.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *A listed tactile signal shall be permitted to be employed.*~~

~~***2-3 Power Supplies.***~~

~~***2-3.1 General.***~~

~~***2-3.1.1*** *All power supplies shall have sufficient capacity to operate the alarm signal(s) for at least 4 continuous minutes.*~~

~~***2-3.1.2*** *There shall be a primary (main) and a secondary (stand-by) power source. For electrically powered household fire warning equipment, the primary (main) power source shall be ac; the secondary (standby) power source shall be a battery.*~~

~~***EXCEPTIONS:*** *1. Where the primary (main) power source is an emergency circuit or a legally required standby circuit capable of operating the system for at least 24 hours in the normal condition, followed by not less than 4 minutes of alarm, a secondary (standby) source shall not be required.*~~

~~*2. Where the primary (main) power source is a circuit of an optional standby system capable of operating the system for at least 24 hours, followed by not less than 4 minutes of alarm, that meets the requirements for either an emergency system or a legally required standby system as defined in NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, Articles 700 and 701, respectively, a secondary (standby) supply shall not be required.*~~

~~*3. Detectors and alarms powered from a monitored dc circuit of a control unit where power for the control unit meets the requirements of Section 2-3 and the circuit remains operable upon loss of primary (main) ac power.*~~

~~*4. A detector and a wireless transmitter that serves only that detector shall be permitted to be powered from a monitored battery primary (main) source where part of a listed, monitored low power radio (wireless) system. A secondary (standby) source shall not be required.*~~

~~*5. In existing construction, either an ac primary power source, as described in 2-3.2, or a monitored battery primary (main) power source, as described in 2-3.3, shall be permitted. A secondary (standby) source shall not be required.*~~

~~*6. Visible notification appliances required by 2-4.4.2.*~~

~~*7. Where the primary (main) power source is non-electrical, a secondary (standby) source shall not be required. The requirements of 2-3.5 shall apply.*~~

~~***2-3.2 Primary Power Supply—AC.***~~

~~***2-3.2.1*** *An ac primary (main) power source shall be a dependable commercial light and power supply source. A visible "power on" indicator shall be provided.*~~

~~***2-3.2.2*** *All electrical systems designed to be installed by other than a qualified electrician shall be powered from a source not in excess of 30 volts that meets the requirements for power limited fire alarm circuits as defined in NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, Article 760.*~~

~~***2-3.2.3*** *A restraining means shall be used at the plug-in of any cord-connected installation.*~~

~~***2-3.2.4*** *AC primary (main) power shall be supplied either from a dedicated branch circuit or the unswitched portion of a branch circuit also used for power and lighting. Operation of a switch (other than a circuit breaker) or a ground-fault circuit-interrupter shall not cause loss of primary (main) power.*~~

~~***EXCEPTIONS:*** *1. Single or multiple station alarms with a supervised rechargeable standby battery that provides at least 4 months of operation with a fully charged battery.*~~

~~*2. Where a ground-fault circuit-interrupter serves all electrical circuits within the household.*~~

~~***2-3.2.5*** *Neither loss nor restoration of primary (main) power shall cause an alarm signal.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *An alarm signal shall be permitted within the household but shall not exceed 2 seconds.*~~

~~***2-3.2.6*** *Where a secondary (standby) battery is provided, the primary (main) power supply shall be of sufficient capacity to operate the system under all conditions of loading with any secondary (standby) battery disconnected or fully discharged.*~~

~~***2-3.3 Primary Power Supply—Monitored Battery.*** *Household fire warning equipment shall be permitted to be powered by a battery, provided that the battery is monitored to ensure that the following conditions are met:*~~

~~*(a) All power requirements are met for at least 1 year of battery life, including monthly testing.*~~

~~*(b) A distinctive audible trouble signal sounds before the battery is incapable of operating (from causes such as aging or terminal corrosion) the device(s) for alarm purposes.*~~

~~*(c) For a unit employing a lock-in alarm feature, automatic transfer is provided from alarm to a trouble condition.*~~

~~*(d) The unit is capable of producing an alarm signal for at least 4 minutes at the battery voltage at which a trouble signal is normally obtained, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.*~~

~~*(e) The audible trouble signal is produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.*~~

~~*(f) Acceptable replacement batteries are clearly identified by the manufacturer's name and model number on the unit near the battery compartment.*~~
~~*(g) A readily noticeable, visible indication is displayed when a primary battery is removed from the unit.*~~

~~*(h) Any unit that uses a nonrechargeable battery as a primary power supply that is capable of a 10-year or greater service life, including testing, and meets the requirements of 2-3.3 (b) through (e) shall not be required to have a replaceable battery.*~~

~~***2-3.4 Secondary (Standby) Power Supply.***~~

~~***2-3.4.1*** *Removal or disconnection of a battery used as a secondary (standby) power source shall cause a distinctive audible or visible trouble signal.*~~

~~**2-3.4.2** Acceptable replacement batteries shall be clearly identified by manufacturer's name and model number on the unit near the battery compartment.~~

~~**2-3.4.3** Where required by law for disposal reasons, rechargeable batteries shall be removable.~~

~~**2-3.4.4 Automatic Recharging.**~~

~~**2-3.4.4.1** Automatic recharging shall be provided where a rechargeable battery is used as the secondary (standby) supply. The supply shall be capable of operating the system for at least 24 hours in the normal condition, followed by not less than 4 minutes of alarm. Loss of the secondary (standby) source shall sound an audible trouble signal at least once every minute.~~

~~**2-3.4.4.2** The battery shall be recharged within 4 hours where power is provided from a circuit that can be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker, or within 48 hours where power is provided from a circuit that cannot be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker.~~

~~**2-3.4.5** Where automatic recharging is not provided, the battery shall be monitored to ensure that the following conditions are met:~~

~~(a) All power requirements are met for at least 1 year of battery life.~~

~~(b) A distinctive audible trouble signal sounds before the battery capacity has been depleted below the level required to produce an alarm signal for 4 minutes.~~

~~**2-3.5 Primary Power—Nonelectrical.** A suitable spring-wound mechanism shall provide power for the nonelectrical portion of a listed signal station alarm. A visible indication shall be provided to show that sufficient operating power is not available.~~

~~**2-4 Equipment Performance.**~~

~~**2-4.1 General.** The failure of any nonreliable or short-life component that renders the detector inoperable shall be readily apparent to the occupant of the living unit without the need for test.~~

~~**2-4.2 Smoke Alarms and Smoke Detectors.** Each smoke alarm and smoke detector shall detect abnormal quantities of smoke that can occur in a dwelling, shall properly operate in the normal environmental conditions of a household and shall be in compliance with ANS/UL 268, Standard for Safety Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, or ANS/UL 217, Standard for Safety Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms.~~

~~**2-4.2.1** The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.~~

~~**2-4.3* Heat Alarms and Heat Detectors.**~~

~~**2- 4.3.1** Each heat detector, including a heat detector integrally mounted on a smoke detector, shall detect abnormally high temperature or rate-of-temperature rise, and all such detectors shall be listed for not less than 50-ft (15-m) spacing.~~

~~**2-4.3.2** Fixed temperature detectors shall have a temperature rating at least 25 _F (13 _C) above the normal ambient temperature and shall not be rated 50 _F (28 _C) higher than the maximum anticipated ambient temperature in the room or space where installed.~~

~~**2-4.4 Alarm Signaling Intensity.**~~

~~**2-4.4.1** All alarm-sounding appliances shall have a minimum rating of 85 dBA at 10 ft (3 m).~~

~~**EXCEPTION:** An additional sounding appliance intended for use in the same room as the user, such as a bedroom, may have a sound pressure level as low as 75 dBA at 10 ft (3 m).~~

~~***2-4.4.2*** *Visible notification appliances used in rooms where a hearing impaired person(s) sleeps shall have a minimum rating of 177 candela for a maximum room size of 14 ft by 16 ft (4.27 m by 4.88 m). For larger rooms, the visible notification appliance shall be located within 16 ft (4.88 m) of the pillow. Visible notification appliances in other areas shall have a minimum rating of 15 candela.*~~

> ~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Where a visible notification appliance in a sleeping room is mounted more than 24 in. (610 mm) below the ceiling, a minimum rating of110 candela shall be permitted.*~~

~~***2-4.5 Control Equipment.***~~

~~***2-4.5.1*** *The control equipment shall be automatically restoring upon restoration of electrical power.*~~

~~***2-4.5.2*** *The control equipment shall be of a type that "locks in" on an alarm condition. Smoke detection circuits shall not be required to lock in.*~~

~~***2-4.5.3*** *If a reset switch is provided, it shall be of a self-restoring type.*~~

~~***2-4.5.4*** *An alarm-silencing switch or an audible trouble-silencing switch shall not be required to be provided.*~~

> ~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Where the switch's silenced position is indicated by a readily apparent signal.*~~

~~***2-4.5.5*** *Each electrical fire warning system and each single station smoke detector shall have an integral test means to allow the householder to check the system and the sensitivity of the detector(s).*~~

~~***2-4.6 Monitoring Integrity of Installation Conductors.*** *All means of interconnecting initiating devices or notification appliances shall be monitored for the integrity of the interconnecting pathways up to the connections to the device or appliance so that the occurrence of a single open or single ground fault, which prevents normal operation of the system, is indicated by a distinctive trouble signal.*~~

> ~~***EXCEPTIONS:*** *1. Conductors connecting multiple station alarms, provided a single fault on the wiring cannot prevent single station operation of any of the interconnected detectors.*~~
>
> ~~*2. Circuits extending from single or multiple station alarms to required remote notification appliances, provided operation of the test feature on any detector causes all connected appliances to activate.*~~

~~***2-4.7 Combination System.***~~

~~***2-4.7.1*** *Where common wiring is employed for a combination system, the equipment for other than the fire warning signaling system shall be connected to the common wiring of the system so that short circuits, open circuits, grounds, or any fault in this equipment or interconnection between this equipment and the fire warning system wiring does not interfere with the supervision of the fire warning system or prevent alarm or trouble signal operation.*~~

~~***2-4.7.2*** *In a fire-burglar system, the operation shall be as follows:*~~

> ~~*(a) A fire alarm signal shall take precedence or be clearly recognizable over any other signal even when the non-fire alarm signal is initiated first.*~~
>
> ~~*(b) Distinctive alarm signals shall be used so that fire alarms can be distinguished from other functions such as burglar alarms. The use of a common sounding appliance for fire and burglar alarms shall be permitted where distinctive signals are used. (See 2-2.2.2.)*~~

~~***2-4.8 Low Power Wireless Systems.*** *Household fire warning systems utilizing low power wireless transmission of signals within the protected household shall comply with the requirements of Section 3-13.*~~

> ~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Paragraph 3-13.4.5 shall not apply.*~~

~~2-4.9 Supervising Station Systems.~~

~~2-4.9.1~~ *~~Any communications method described in Section 4-5 shall be permitted for transmission of signals from household fire warning equipment to a supervising station. All of the provisions of Section 4-5 shall apply, as appropriate.~~*

~~EXCEPTIONS:~~ *~~1. Only one telephone line shall be required for one- and two-family residences.~~*

~~2. Each DACT shall be required to be programmed to call a single DACR number only.~~

~~3. Each DACT serving a one- or two-family residence shall transmit a test signal to its associated receiver at least monthly.~~

~~2-4.9.2*~~ *~~On receipt of an alarm signal from household fire warning equipment, the supervising station shall immediately (within 90 seconds) retransmit the alarm to the public fire communications center.~~*

~~EXCEPTION:~~ *~~The supervising station shall be permitted to contact the residence for verification of an alarm condition and, where acceptable assurance is provided within 90 seconds that the fire service is not needed, retransmission of an alarm to the public service fire communications center shall not be required.~~*

~~2-5 Installation.~~

~~2-5.1 General.~~

~~2-5.1.1 General Provisions.~~

~~2-5.1.1.1*~~ *~~All equipment shall be installed in a workmanlike manner.~~*

~~2-5.1.1.2~~ *~~All devices shall be so located and mounted that accidental operation is not caused by jarring or vibration.~~*

~~2-5.1.1.3~~ *~~All installed household fire warning equipment shall be mounted so as to be supported independently of its attachment to wires.~~*

~~2-5.1.1.4~~ *~~All equipment shall be restored to normal as promptly as possible after each alarm or test.~~*

~~2-5.1.1.5~~ *~~The supplier or installing contractor shall provide the owner with:~~*

~~(a) An instruction booklet illustrating typical installation layouts.~~

~~(b) Instruction charts describing the operation, method and frequency of testing, and proper maintenance of household fire warning equipment.~~

~~(c) Printed information for establishing a household emergency evacuation plan.~~

~~(d) Printed information to inform owners where they can obtain repair or replacement service, and where and how parts requiring regular replacement (such as batteries or bulbs) can be obtained within 2 weeks.~~

~~2-5.1.2 Interconnection of Detectors or Multiple Station Alarms.~~

~~(a) Where the interconnected wiring is unsupervised, no more than 18 multiple station alarms shall be interconnected in a multiple station configuration.~~

~~(b) Where the interconnecting wiring is supervised, the number of interconnected detectors shall be limited to 64.~~

~~***2-5.1.2.1*** *Interconnection that causes other alarms to sound shall be limited to an individual family living unit. Remote annunciation from single or multiple station alarms shall be permitted.*~~

~~***2-5.1.2.2*** *No more than 12 smoke alarms shall be interconnected in a multiple station connection. The remainder of the alarms shall be permitted to be of other types.*~~

~~***2-5.2* Alarm and Detector Location and Spacing.***~~

~~***2-5.2.1 Smoke Alarms and Smoke Detectors.***~~

~~***2-5.2.1.1*** *Smoke alarms and smoke detectors in rooms with ceiling slopes greater than 1 ft in 8 ft (1m in 8 m) horizontally shall be located at the high side of the room.*~~

~~***2-5.2.1.2*** *Smoke alarms and smoke detectors installed in a stairwell shall be so located as to ensure that smoke rising in the stairwell cannot be prevented from reaching the detector by an intervening door or obstruction.*~~

~~***2-5.2.1.3*** *Smoke alarms and smoke detectors installed to detect a fire in the basement shall be located in close proximity to the stairway leading to the floor above.*~~

~~***2-5.2.1.4*** *Smoke alarms and smoke detectors installed to comply with 2-2.1.1.1 on a story without a separate sleeping area shall be located in close proximity to the stairway leading to the floor above.*~~

~~***2-5.2.1.5*** *Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be mounted on the ceiling at least 4 in (102 mm) from a wall or on a wall with the top of the detector not less than 4 in. (102 mm) nor more than 12 in. (305 mm) below the ceiling.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Where the mounting surface might become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, the detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.*~~

~~***2-5.2.1.6*** *Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located within kitchens or garages, or in other spaces where temperatures can fall below 40 _F (4 _C) or exceed 100 _F (38 _C). Smoke detectors shall not be located closer than 3 ft (0.9 m) horizontally from:*~~

~~*(a) The door to a kitchen.*~~

~~*(b) The door to a bathroom containing a tub or shower.*~~

~~*(c) The supply registers of a forced air heating or cooling system, and outside of the airflow from those registers.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Detectors specifically listed for the application.*~~

~~***2-5.2.2* Heat Detectors Heat Alarms.***~~

~~***2-5.2.2.1*** *On smooth ceilings, heat detectors shall be installed within the strict limitations of their listed spacing.*~~

~~***2-5.2.2.2*** *For sloped ceilings having a rise greater than 1 ft in 8 ft (1 m in 8 m) horizontally, the detector shall be located on or near the ceiling at or within 3 ft (0.9m) of the peak. The spacing of additional detectors, if any, shall be based on a horizontal distance measurement, not on a measurement along the slope of the ceiling.*~~

~~***2-5.2.2.3*** *Heat detectors and heat alarms shall be mounted on the ceiling at least 4 in. (102 mm) from a wall or on a wall with the top of the detector not less than 4 in. (102 mm) nor more than 12 in. (305 mm) below the ceiling.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Where the mounting surface might become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, the detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.*~~

~~***2-5.2.2.4*** *In rooms with open joists or beams, all ceiling-mounted detectors shall be located on the bottom of such joists or beams.*~~

~~***2-5.2.2.5**** *Detectors installed on an open-joisted ceiling shall have their smooth ceiling spacing reduced where this spacing is measured at right angles to solid joists; in the case of heat detectors, this spacing shall not exceed 1/2 of the listed spacing.*~~

~~***2-5.3 Wiring and Equipment.*** *The installation of wiring and equipment shall be in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, Article 760.*~~

~~***2-6 Maintenance and Tests.***~~

~~***2-6.1* Maintenance.*** *Where batteries are used as a source of energy, they shall be replaced in accordance with the recommendations of the alarm equipment manufacturer.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Batteries described in 2-3.3 (h).*~~

~~***2-6.2* Tests.***~~

~~***2-6.2.1 Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms.*** *Homeowners shall inspect and test smoke alarms and all connected appliances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at least monthly.*~~

~~***2-6.2.2 Fire Alarm Systems.*** *Homeowners shall test systems in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall have every household fire alarm system having a control panel tested by a qualified service technician at least every 3 years. This test shall be conducted according to the methods of Chapter 7.*~~

~~***2-7 Markings and Instructions.*** *All household fire warning equipment or systems shall be plainly marked with the following information on the unit:*~~

~~*(a) Manufacturer's or listee's name, address and model number;*~~
~~*(b) A mark or certification that the unit has been approved or listed by a testing laboratory;*~~
~~*(c) Electrical rating (where applicable);*~~
~~*(d) Temperature rating (where applicable);*~~
~~*(e) Spacing rating (where applicable);*~~
~~*(f) Operating instructions;*~~
~~*(g) Test instructions.*~~
~~*(h) Maintenance instructions;*~~
~~*(i) Replacement and service instructions.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *Where space limitations prohibit inclusion of 2-7 (g), (h) and (i), a label or plaque suitable for permanent attachment within the living unit, or a manufacturer's manual, shall be provided with the equipment and referenced on the equipment. In the case of a household fire warning system, the required information shall be prominently displayed at the control panel.*~~

~~***Add a Section 5.12.4 as follows:***~~

~~***Sec. 5.12.4*** *Each manual fire alarm box shall be securely mounted. The operable part of each manual fire alarm box shall be not less than 31/2 ft (1.1 m) and not more than 4 ft (1.22 m) above floor level.*~~

~~***Add a Section 5.12.8 as follows:***~~

~~***Sec. 5.12.8**** *Additional manual fire alarm boxes shall be provided so that the travel distance to the nearest fire alarm box will not be in excess of 200 ft (61m)measured horizontally on the same floor.*~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *When individual dwelling units are served by a single exit stairway, additional boxes at other than the ground floor may be omitted.*~~

~~***Amend Section 6.4.2.2.2, Exception 4 as follows:***~~
~~*Exception 4: Where the installation wiring is enclosed in a 2-hour-rated cable assembly, enclosed in a 2-hour-rated enclosure, other than a stairwell or installation of listed circuit integrity (C.I.) cable, which meets or exceeds a 2-hour fire-resistance rating.*~~

~~***Sec. 4-4.5. Notification Appliances for the Hearing Impaired.***~~
~~*Approved notification appliances for the hearing impaired shall be installed in the following areas:*~~

~~*1. Restrooms*~~
~~*2. Corridors*~~
~~*3. Music practice rooms*~~
~~*4. Band rooms*~~
~~*5. Gymnasiums*~~
~~*6. Multipurpose rooms*~~
~~*7. Occupational shops*~~
~~*8. Occupied rooms where ambient noise impairs hearing of the fire alarm*~~
~~*9. Lobbies*~~
~~*10. Meeting rooms*~~
~~*11. Any other area for common use*~~

~~***NOTE:*** *This section is also adopted by the Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance, for buildings not regulated by the State Fire Marshal.*~~

~~*The SFM does not adopt Chapter 8, of NFPA 72, 1999 edition, Fire Warning Equipment for Dwelling Units.*~~

~~*The SFM will maintain the use of the existing Chapter 2, Household Fire Warning Equipment of the 1996 edition of NFPA 72, as amended.*~~

~~***Amend Sections 7.4.2.1 and 7.4.3.2 as follows:***~~

~~***Sec. 7.4.2.1*** *Audible signal appliances intended for operation in the public mode shall have a sound level of not less than 75dBA at 10 feet (3048 mm) or more than 110dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance.*~~

~~***Sec. 7.4.3.2 PRIVATE MODE*** *Audible signals intended for operation in the private mode shall have a sound level of not less than 45dBA at 10 feet (3048 mm) or more than 110dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance.*~~

~~***Add a Section 6.8.5.4.1 (2) as follows:***~~

~~***Sec. 6.8.5.4.1 (2)*** *A smoke detector continuously subjected to a smoke concentration above alarm threshold magnitude initiates a system alarm within 30 seconds.*~~

~~***Amend Section 6.8.5.4 as follows:***~~
~~*(5) Operation of the patient room smoke detector in Group I, Division 1.1, 1.2 and 2 Occupancies shall not include any alarm verification feature.*~~

~~***Sec. 6.9.6.1*** *Special fire alarm provisions for occupancies having floors used for human occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of the fire department vehicle access, are found in Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 4, of the California Building Code. Those provisions include providing a central control station. The requirements provided for, in a fire command center, may be included within the central control station.*~~

~~***Amend existing Section 5-8.1.2 by adding an exception as follows:***~~

~~***EXCEPTION:*** *When individual units are served by a single stairway, additional boxes at other than the ground floor may be omitted.*~~

~~SECTION 3506~~
~~[FOR DSA-AC] CALIFORNIA STANDARDS~~

~~3506.1 [For DSA-AC] California Code of Regulations (CCR).~~
~~The CCR is the official compilation, printing and publication of adoption, amendment or repeal of regulations as published by the California Building Standards Commission for Title 24 and the Office of Administrative Law for all other Titles of the CCR.~~

~~NOTES:~~ *~~1. DSA-AC adopts the CCR by reference for the specific scope of application for which DSA-AC is responsible for enforcement, and the specific statutory authority of DSA-AC to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards per 101.17.11.~~*

~~2. The Division of the State Architect - Access Compliance California standards referencing CCR are also referenced in Title 24, Part 12.~~

CHAPTER 35
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ANSI	American National Standards Institute 25 West 43rd Street, Fourth Floor New York, NY 10036
Standard feference number	Title — Referenced in code section number
S3.41-96	*American National Standard Audible Evacuation Signal*.....*907.9.2.1*
Z97.1-84 (R 1994)	Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings – Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test (Reaffirmed 1994).....2306.1.2, *2406.1.2,* 2409.1, *7-3094.2*

ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers Three Park Avenue New York, NY 10016-5990
Standard feference number	Title — Referenced in code section number
A17.1-04	Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators with A17.1a-2004 addenda and A17.1S Supplement …….....1007.4, *1124A.9, 1116B.1.5,* 1607.8.1, 3001.2, 3001.4, 3002.5, 3003.2, 3409.8.2, *7-3094.2, 7-3094.3, 7-3094.4*
A18.1-03	Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts.....~~1109.7~~, 2702.2.6, 3409.8.3

BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association 355 Lexington Avenue, 17th Floor New York, NY 10017-6603
Standard reference number	Title — Referenced in code section number
A 156.10-99	American National Standard for Power Operated Pedestrian Doors…….....1008.1.3.2, *1133B.2.3.2*
A 156.19-02	Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Operated Doors.....1008.1.3.2, *1133B.2.3.2, 7-3093.4*

CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission 4330 East West Highway Bethesada, MD 20814-4408
Standard reference number	Title — Referenced in code section number
16 CFR Part 1201 (1977)	Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Material.....2406.1.1, 2406.2.1, 2407.1, 2408.2.1, 2408.3

NFPA	National Fire Protection Association 1 Batterymarch Park Quincy, MA 02269-9101
Standard reference number	Title — Referenced in code section number
72-02	National Fire Alarm Code*, as amended*.....901.6, 903.4.1, 904.3.5, 907.2, 907.2.1.1, 907.2.10, 907.2.10.4, 907.2.11.2, 907.2.11.3, 907.2.12.2.3, 907.2.12.3, 907.4, 907.5, *907.9.1.4,* 907.9.2, *907.9.2.1,* 907.10, 907.14, 907.16, 907.17, 911.1, *1007.9, 1114B.2.2,* 3006.5
	5.12.4 The operable part of each manual fire alarm box shall not be less than 1.1 m (3 ½ ft) and not more than ~~1.37 m (4 ½ ft)~~ *1.22 m (4 ft)* above floor level.
	7.4.1.2 The total sound pressure level produced by combining the ambient sound pressure level with all audible notification appliances operating shall not exceed ~~120~~ *110* dBA anywhere in the occupiable area.
	7.4.3.1 Audible notification appliances intended for operation in the private mode shall have a sound level of not less than 45 dBA at 3 m (10 ft) or more than ~~120~~ *110* dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance.

Authority: Government Code Section 4450.
Reference: Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(d) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.